This Page Is Inserted by IFW Operations and is not a part of the Official Record

BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images may include (but are not limited to):

- BLACK BORDERS
- TEXT CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- FADED TEXT
- ILLEGIBLE TEXT
- SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- COLORED PHOTOS
- BLACK OR VERY BLACK AND WHITE DARK PHOTOS
- GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS

IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.

As rescanning documents will not correct images, please do not report the images to the Image Problem Mailbox.

WO 01/00611 PCT/EP00/05676

-1-

RESPIRATORY SYNCYTIAL VIRUS REPLICATION INHIBITORS

The present invention is concerned with benzimidazoles and imidazopyridines having antiviral activity, in particular, they have an inhibitory activity on the replication of the respiratory syncytial virus. It further concerns their preparation and compositions comprising them, as well as their use as a medicine.

Human RSV or Respiratory Syncytial Virus is a large RNA virus, member of the family of Paramyxoviridae, subfamily pneumovirinae together with bovine RSV virus. Human RSV is responsible for a spectrum of respiratory tract diseases in people of all ages throughout the world. It is the major cause of lower respiratory tract illness during infancy and childhood. Over half of all infants encounter RSV in their first year of life, and almost all within their first two years. The infection in young children can cause lung damage that persists for years and may contribute to chronic lung disease in later life (chronic wheezing, asthma). Older children and adults often suffer from a (bad) common cold upon RSV infection. In old age, susceptibility again increases, and RSV has been implicated in a number of outbreaks of pneumonia in the aged resulting in significant mortality.

20

15

5

10

Infection with a virus from a given subgroup does not protect against a subsequent infection with an RSV isolate from the same subgroup in the following winter season. Re-infection with RSV is thus common, despite the existence of only two subtypes, A and B.

25

30

35

Today only three drugs have been approved for use against RSV infection. Ribavirin, a nucleoside analogue, provides an aerosol treatment for serious RSV infection in hospitalized children. The aerosol route of administration, the toxicity (risk of teratogenicity), the cost and the highly variable efficacy limit its use. The other two drugs, RespiGam® and palivizumab, polyclonal and monoclonal antibody immunostimulants, are intended to be used in a preventive way.

Other attempts to develop a safe and effective RSV vaccine have all met with failure thus far. Inactivated vaccines failed to protect against disease, and in fact in some cases enhanced disease during subsequent infection. Life attenuated vaccines have been tried with limited success. Clearly there is a need for an efficacious non-toxic and easy to administer drug against RSV replication.

EP-A-0,005,318, EP-A-0,099,139, EP-A-0,145,037, EP-A-0,144,101, EP-A-0,151,826, EP-A-0,151,824, EP-A-0,232,937, EP-A-0,295,742, EP 0,297,661, EP-A-0,307,014, WO 92 01697 describe benzimidazole and imidazopyridine substituted piperidine and piperazine derivatives as antihistaminics, antiallergics or serotonine antagonists.

The present invention concerns the use of a compound for the manufacture of a medicament for treating viral infections, wherein the compound is a compound of formula

$$Q = \begin{bmatrix} R^1 & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ N & & & \\$$

10

15

20

a prodrug, N-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex and stereochemically isomeric form thereof, wherein

 $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ represents a bivalent radical of formula

-CH=CH-CH=CH- (a-1);

-N=CH-CH=CH- (a-2);

-CH=N-CH=CH- (a-3);

-CH=CH-N=CH- (a-4); or

-CH=CH-CH=N- (a-5);

wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, carboxyl, aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, mono- or di(C₁₋₄alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, or a radical of formula

25

wherein =Z is =O, =CH-C(=O)-NR 5a R 5b , =CH $_2$, =CH-C $_{1-6}$ alkyl, =N-OH or =N-O-C $_{1-6}$ alkyl;

Q is a radical of formula

WO 01/00611 PCT/EP00/05676

-3-

 $Y_{(CH_2)_v}^{1}$ $Y_{(CH_2)_v$

wherein Alk is C₁₋₆alkanediyl;

5

20

25

30

Y¹ is a bivalent radical of formula –NR²- or –CH(NR²R⁴)-; X¹ is NR⁴, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, O, CH₂, C(=O), C(=CH₂), CH(OH), CH(CH₃), CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂; X² is a direct bond, CH₂, C(=O), NR⁴, C₁₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, NR⁴-C₁₋₄alkyl; t is 2, 3, 4 or 5; u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5; v is 2 or 3; and

whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced by R³; with the proviso that when R³ is hydroxy or C₁₋₆alkyloxy, then R³ can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

G is a direct bond or C₁₋₁₀alkanediyl;

R¹ is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from piperidinyl, piperazinyl, pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, furanyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, thienyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, and isothiazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl,

 C_{1-6} alkyloxy, C_{1-6} alkylthio, C_{1-6} alkyloxy C_{1-6} alkyl, aryl, aryl C_{1-6} alkyl, aryl C_{1-6} alkyl, aryl C_{1-6} alkyl, mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino C_{1-6} alkyl, polyhalo C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkylcarbonylamino, C_{1-6} alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C_{1-6} alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, and mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-;

each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;

 R^2 is hydrogen, formyl, $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkylcarbonyl, Hetcarbonyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, $C_{3\text{-}7}$ cycloalkyl substituted with $N(R^6)_2$, or $C_{1\text{-}10}$ alkyl substituted with $N(R^6)_2$ and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, $C_{3\text{-}7}$ cycloalkyl, $C_{2\text{-}5}$ alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di($C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl)amino, $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;

 R^3 is hydrogen, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyloxy, aryl C_{1-6} alkyl or aryl C_{1-6} alkyl or aryl C_{1-6} alkyl;

R^{5a}, R^{5b}, R^{5c} and R^{5d} each independently are hydrogen or C₁₋₆alkyl; or R^{5a} and R^{5b}, or R^{5c} and R^{5d} taken together form a bivalent radical of formula -(CH₂)_s-wherein s is 4 or 5;

R⁶ is hydrogen, C₁₋₄alkyl, formyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonyl or C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl;

aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy; and

Het is pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl.

10

15

25

30

5

The present invention also relates to a method of treating warm-blooded animals suffering from or susceptible to viral infections, in particular RSV infection. Said method comprises the administration of a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I) or a prodrug thereof, a N-oxide form, a pharmaceutically acceptable acid or base addition salt, a quaternary amine, a metal complex or a stereochemically isomeric form thereof in admixture with a pharmaceutical carrier.

A further embodiment of the present invention includes the compounds of formula (I')

$$Q = \begin{bmatrix} R^1 \\ A^2 \\ A^3 \end{bmatrix} \qquad (1)$$

their prodrugs, *N*-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms, wherein

 $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - represents a radical of formula

-CH=CH-CH=CH- (a-1);

-N=CH-CH=CH- (a-2);

-CH=N-CH=CH- (a-3); -CH=CH-N=CH- (a-4); or

-CH=CH-CH=N- (a-5);

wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy,

 C_{1-6} alkyloxy, polyhalo C_{1-6} alkyl, carboxyl, amino C_{1-6} alkyl, mono- or di(C_{1-4} alkyl)amino C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, or a radical of formula

-5-

wherein =Z is =O, =CH-C(=O)-NR 5a R 5b , =CH $_2$, =CH-C $_{1-6}$ alkyl, =N-OH or =N-O-C $_{1-6}$ alkyl;

Q is a radical of formula

5

10

$$Y_{(CH_2)_v}^{1}$$
 $Y_{(CH_2)_v}^{1}$ $Y_{(CH_2)_v$

wherein Alk is C₁₋₆alkanediyl;

Y¹ is a bivalent radical of formula –NR²- or –CH(NR²R⁴)-; X¹ is NR⁴, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, O, CH₂, C(=O), C(=CH₂), CH(OH), CH(CH₃), CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂; X² is a direct bond, CH₂, C(=O), NR⁴, C₁₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, NR⁴-C₁₋₄alkyl; t is 2, 3, 4 or 5; u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5; v is 2 or 3; and

whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced by R³; with the proviso that when R³ is hydroxy or C₁₋₆alkyloxy, then R³ can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

G is a direct bond or C₁₋₁₀alkanediyl;

R¹ is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyl-carbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;

-6-

R² is hydrogen, formyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂, or C₁₋₁₀alkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂ and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl, C₂₋₅alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;

 R^3 is hydrogen, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyloxy, aryl C_{1-6} alkyl or aryl C_{1-6} alkyl or aryl C_{1-6} alkyl;

R^{5a}, R^{5b}, R^{5c} and R^{5d} each independently are hydrogen or C₁₋₆alkyl; or R^{5a} and R^{5b}, or R^{5c} and R^{5d} taken together form a bivalent radical of formula -(CH₂)_s-wherein s is 4 or 5;

R⁶ is hydrogen, C₁₋₄alkyl, formyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonyl or C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl;

aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, and C₁₋₆alkyloxy;

provided that when G is methylene, and R^1 is 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 6-methyl-2-pyridyl, 2-pyrazinyl or 5-methyl-imidazol-4-yl, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - is -CH=CH-CH=CH- or -N=CH-CH=CH-, then Q is other than

$$H_{1} \longrightarrow H_{2} \longrightarrow H_{2$$

Yet another embodiment of the present invention includes the following group of compounds

2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-5-chloro-7-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride tetrahydrate;

N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1 H-1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1 H-1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1 H-1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1 H-1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1 H-1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1 H-1-(2-aminoethyl)-1 H-1-(2

25 benzimidazol-2-amine;

5

10

15

N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2,5-dimethyl-4-oxazolyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate;

4-[[3-[[5-(methoxymethyl)-2-furanyl]methyl]-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidineetanamine;

;

-7-

- N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(5-methyl-3-isoxazolyl)methyl]-1Hbenzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate;
- N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate;
- N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate;
 - N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3Himidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine;
 - 4-[[3-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-
- piperazineethanamine; 10
 - N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(4-thiazolylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine;
 - N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(5-phenyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl)methyl]-1Hbenzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride;
 - 5-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl-2-
- oxazolemethanol tetrahydrochloride dihydrate;
 - N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3-methyl-5-isoxazolyl)methyl]-1Hbenzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate;
 - 4-[[1-[[2-(dimethylamino)-4-thiazolyl]methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1piperidineethanamine tetrahydrochloride monohydrate 2-propanolate (1:1);
- ethyl 5-[[2-[[1-[2-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]amino]-20 1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-2-methyl-4-oxazolecarboxylate;
 - 4-[[1-[(2-methyl-4-thiazolyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1piperidineetahnamine;
 - N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-3-furanyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-
- 25 2-amine:
 - ethyl 4-[[3-[(3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-7-methyl-3H-imidazo[4,5b]pyridine-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate;
 - 1,1-dimethylethyl 4-[[1-[[3-[2-(dimethylamino)ethoxy]-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl]methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino-1-piperidinecarboxylate;
- ethyl 4-[[1-[(3-amino-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-30 piperidinecarboxylate; and
 - N-[1-(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]-1-(3-pyridinylcarbonyl)-4piperidinamine.
 - the prodrugs, N-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms thereof.
- Said group of compounds will be referred to hereinafter as the compounds of group (I'').

10

15

20

25

The term prodrug as used throughout this text means the pharmacologically acceptable derivatives, e.g. esters and amides, such that the resulting biotransformation product of the derivative is the active drug as defined in the compounds of formula (I). The reference by Goodman and Gilman (The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics, 8th ed., McGraw-Hill, Int. Ed. 1992, "Biotransformation of Drugs", p. 13-15) describing prodrugs generally, is hereby incorporated.

As used herein C_{1.3}alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 3 carbon atoms such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, 1-methylethyl and the like; C1-alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 4 carbon atoms such as the group defined for C₁₋₃alkyl and butyl and the like; C₂₋₄alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 2 to 4 carbon atoms such as ethyl, propyl, 1-methylethyl, butyl and the like; C_{1.6}alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms such as the groups defined for C₁₋₄alkyl and pentyl, hexyl, 2-methylbutyl and the like; C₁₋₉alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 9 carbon atoms such as the groups defined for C₁₋₆alkyl and heptyl, octyl, nonyl, 2-methylhexyl, 2-methylheptyl and the like; C₁₋₁₀alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms such as the groups defined for C_{1.9}alkyl and decyl, 2-methylnonyl and the like. C3.7cycloalkyl is generic to cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl and cycloheptyl; C₂₋₅alkanediyl defines bivalent straight and branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 2 to 5 carbon atoms such as, for example, 1.2-ethanediyl, 1.3-propanediyl, 1.4-butanediyl, 1.2-propanediyl, 2.3-butanediyl, 1.5pentanediyl and the like, C₂₋₅alkanediyl is substituted on C₁₋₁₀alkyl as provided for in the definition of R², it is meant to be substituted on one carbon atom thus forming a spiro moiety; C_{1.4} alkanediyl defines bivalent straight and branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 4 carbon atoms such as, for example, methylene, 1,2-ethanediyl, 1,3-propanediyl, 1,4-butanediyl and the like; C_{1.6}alkanediyl is meant to include C_{1.4}alkanediyl and the higher homologues thereof having from 5 to 6 carbon atoms such as, for example, 1,5-pentanediyl, 1,6-hexanediyl and the like; C_{1,10}alkanediyl is meant to include C_{1,6}alkanediyl and the higher homologues thereof having from 7 to 10 carbon atoms such as, for example, 1,7-heptanediyl, 1,8-octanediyl,

1,9-nonanediyl, 1,10-decanediyl and the like.

•

As used herein before, the term (=O) forms a carbonyl moiety when attached to a carbon atom, a sulfoxide moiety when attached to a sulfur atom and a sulfonyl moiety when two of said terms are attached to a sulfur atom. The term (=N-OH) forms a hydroxylimine moiety when attached to a carbon atom.

5

10

15

20

25

30

The term halo is generic to fluoro, chloro, bromo and iodo. As used in the foregoing and hereinafter, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl as a group or part of a group is defined as mono- or polyhalosubstituted C₁₋₆alkyl, in particular methyl with one or more fluoro atoms, for example, difluoromethyl or trifluoromethyl. In case more than one halogen atoms are attached to an alkyl group within the definition of polyhaloC₁₋₄alkyl, they may be the same or different.

When any variable (e.g. aryl, R², R³, R⁴, R^{5a}, R^{5b} etc.) occurs more than one time in any constituent, each definition is independent.

It will be appreciated that some of the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') and their prodrugs, N-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms may contain one or more centers of chirality and exist as stereochemically isomeric forms.

The term "stereochemically isomeric forms" as used hereinbefore defines all the possible stereoisomeric forms which the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I''), and their prodrugs, N-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes or physiologically functional derivatives may possess. Unless otherwise mentioned or indicated, the chemical designation of compounds denotes the mixture of all possible stereochemically isomeric forms, said mixtures containing all diastereomers and enantiomers of the basic molecular structure as well as each of the individual isomeric forms of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') and their prodrugs, N-oxides, salts, solvates, quaternary amines, metal complexes substantially free, i.e. associated with less than 10%, preferably less than 5%, in particular less than 2% and most preferably less than 1% of the other isomers. Stereochemically isomeric forms of the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') are obviously intended to be embraced within the scope of this invention.

As used hereinafter the terms trans, cis, R or S are well-known by the person skilled in the art.

i

10

25

30

For some of the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I''), their prodrugs, N-oxides, salts, solvates, quaternary amines or metal complexes and the intermediates used in the preparation thereof, the absolute stereochemical configuration was not experimentally determined. In these cases the stereoisomeric form which was first isolated is designated as "A" and the second as "B", without further reference to the actual stereochemical configuration. However, said "A" and "B" stereoisomeric forms can be unambiguously characterized by for instance their optical rotation in case "A" and "B" have an enantiomeric relationship. A person skilled in the art is able to determine the absolute configuration of such compounds using art-known methods such as, for example, X-ray diffraction. In case "A" and "B" are stereoisomeric mixtures, they can be further separated whereby the respective first fractions isolated are designated "A1" and "B1" and the second as "A2" and "B2", without further reference to the actual stereochemical configuration.

For therapeutic use, salts of the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') are those wherein the counterion is pharmaceutically acceptable. However, salts of acids and bases which are non-pharmaceutically acceptable may also find use, for example, in the preparation or purification of a pharmaceutically acceptable compound. All salts, whether pharmaceutically acceptable or not are included within the ambit of the present invention.

The pharmaceutically acceptable acid and base addition salts as mentioned hereinabove are meant to comprise the therapeutically active non-toxic acid and base addition salt forms which the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') are able to form. The pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts can conveniently be obtained by treating the base form with such appropriate acid. Appropriate acids comprise, for example, inorganic acids such as hydrohalic acids, e.g. hydrochloric or hydrobromic acid, sulfuric, nitric, phosphoric and the like acids; or organic acids such as, for example, acetic, propanoic, hydroxyacetic, lactic, pyruvic, oxalic (i.e. ethanedioic), malonic, succinic (i.e. butanedioic acid), maleic, fumaric, malic (i.e. hydroxybutanedioic acid), tartaric, citric, methanesulfonic, ethanesulfonic, benzenesulfonic, p-toluenesulfonic, cyclamic, salicylic, p-aminosalicylic, pamoic and the like acids.

Conversely said salt forms can be converted by treatment with an appropriate base into the free base form.

;

10

15

20

30

The compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') containing an acidic proton may also be converted into their non-toxic metal or amine addition salt forms by treatment with appropriate organic and inorganic bases. Appropriate base salt forms comprise, for example, the ammonium salts, the alkali and earth alkaline metal salts, e.g. the lithium, sodium, potassium, magnesium, calcium salts and the like, salts with organic bases, e.g. the benzathine, N-methyl-D-glucamine, hydrabamine salts, and salts with amino acids such as, for example, arginine, lysine and the like.

The term addition salt as used hereinabove also comprises the solvates which the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') as well as the salts thereof, are able to form. Such solvates are for example hydrates, alcoholates and the like.

The term "quaternary amine" as used hereinbefore defines the quaternary ammonium salts which the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') are able to form by reaction between a basic nitrogen of a compound of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') and an appropriate quaternizing agent, such as, for example, an optionally substituted alkylhalide, arylhalide or arylalkylhalide, e.g. methyliodide or benzyliodide. Other reactants with good leaving groups may also be used, such as alkyl trifluoromethanesulfonates, alkyl methanesulfonates, and alkyl p-toluenesulfonates. A quaternary amine has a positively charged nitrogen. Pharmaceutically acceptable counterions include chloro, bromo, iodo, trifluoroacetate and acetate. The counterion of choice can be introduced using ion exchange resins.

It will be appreciated that the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') may have metal binding, chelating, complexating properties and therefore may exist as metal complexes or metal chelates. Such metalated derivatives of the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') are intended to be included within the scope of the present invention.

Some of the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') may also exist in their tautomeric form. Such forms although not explicitly indicated in the above formula are intended to be included within the scope of the present invention.

A special group of compounds are those compounds of formula (I) or (I') wherein one or more of the following restrictions apply:

- Q is a radical of formula (b-1), (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) or (b-8);
- X² is a direct bond, CH₂ or C(=O);

- R¹ is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C1-6alkyl, C1-6alkyloxy, C1-6alkylthio,
- $C_{1\text{-}6}alkyloxyC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ arylC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ arylC_{1\text{-}6}alkyloxy,\ hydroxyC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ mono-or$ $di(C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl)amino, mono-or\ di(C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl)aminoC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ polyhaloC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl-alkyl,\ polyhaloC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl-alkyl,\ polyhaloC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl-alkyl-alkyl,\ polyhaloC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl-alkyl$ carbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)- $arylC_{1-6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n}-\ and\ mono-or\ di(C_{1-6}alkyl)amino(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n}-;$
- R² is hydrogen, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl substituted with NHR⁶, or C₁₋₁₀alkyl substituted with NHR⁶ and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C3.7cycloalkyl, C2.5alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy; - R³ is hydrogen, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy or arylC₁₋₆alkyl;
- R⁶ is hydrogen, C₁₋₄alkyl, formyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonyl or C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl.

A special group of compounds are those compounds of formula (I') wherein the following restrictions apply:

when Q is
$$R^2 - N$$
 X^1

wherein X^1 is NR^4 , O, S, S(=0), S(=0)₂, CH₂, C(=0), C(=CH₂) or CH(CH₃), then R^1 is 20 other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C₁₋₆alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C1-6alkyl;

when Q is
$$R^2$$
—N— X^1 —

25

wherein X^1 is NR^4 , O, S, S(=0), S(=0)2, CH_2 , C(=0), $C(=CH_2)$ or $CH(CH_3)$, then R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C₁₋₆alkyl, pyridyl substituted with 1 or 2 C₁₋₆alkyloxy, pyrazinyl, pyrrolyl, pyrrolyl substituted with C₁₋₆alkyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C₁₋₆alkyl;

when Q is
$$R^2-N$$

wherein X¹ is NR⁴, O, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, CH₂, C(=O), C(=CH₂) or CH(CH₃), then R¹ is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C₁₋₆alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C1-6alkyl;

when Q is
$$R^2$$
—N—CH₂-

WO 01/00611 PCT/EP00/05676

-13-

1

then R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;

when Q is
$$R^2$$
—N— X^2 —

wherein X^2 is CH_2 or a direct bond, then R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.

Or a special group of compounds are those compounds of formula (I') wherein one of the following applies:

Q is a radical of formula (b-1); (b-2); (b-3); (b-5); (b-6); (b-7); (b-8); (b-4) wherein u is 1,3,4 or 5; or (b-4) wherein u is 2, wherein Y¹ is -CH(NR²R⁴)-, wherein X¹ is CH(OH), CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂, and wherein R¹ is pyridyl or imidazolyl, each of said heterocycles substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, oxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy,

hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or

di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, or each of said heterocycles substituted with, where possible 2, 3 or 4 C₁₋₆alkyl groups; or wherein R¹ is pyrimidinyl or pyrazinyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy,

hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; or wherein R¹ is pyrrolyl or pyrazolyl, each of said heterocycles optionally being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or

heterocycles optionally being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-,

35 C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-,

 C_{1-6} alkyloxy(- CH_2 - CH_2 - $O)_n$ -, aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy(- CH_2 - CH_2 - $O)_n$ - and mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino(- CH_2 - CH_2 - $O)_n$ -; or

O is a radical of formula (b-1); (b-2); (b-3); (b-4); (b-6); (b-7); (b-8); (b-5) wherein v is 3; or (b-5) wherein v is 2, wherein Y¹ is -CH(NR²R⁴)-, wherein X¹ is CH(OH), CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂ and wherein R¹ is pyrrolyl or imidazolyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, 6alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁-10 6alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -, $C_{1.6}$ alkyloxy(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -, aryl $C_{1.6}$ alkyloxy(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ - and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, or each of said heterocycles being substituted with, where possible 2, 3 or 4 C_{1.6}alkyl groups; or wherein R¹ is pyridyl 15 being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂- NR^{5c} -, aryl-SO₂- NR^{5c} -, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)- $NR^{5c}R^{5d}$, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-. 20 halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_nand mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, or pyridyl being substituted with, 2, 3 or 4 C_{1.6}alkyl groups or 3 or 4 C_{1.6}alkyloxy groups; or wherein R¹ is pyrazinyl being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, 25 C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; or 30 wherein R¹ is pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl or pyrazolyl, each of said heterocycles optionally being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyl-35 carbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d} HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁

į

O)_n-, $arylC_{1-6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ - and mono-or $di(C_{1-6}alkyl)amino(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -; or

Q is a radical of formula (b-1); (b-2); (b-3); (b-4); (b-6); (b-7); (b-8); (b-5) wherein v is 2; or (b-5) wherein v is 3, wherein Y¹ is -CH(NR²R⁴)-, wherein X¹ is CH(OH), CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂ and wherein R¹ is pyridyl or imidazolyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC 10 6alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁. 6alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -, C_{1-6} alkyloxy(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -, aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ - and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, or each of said heterocycles being 15 substituted with, where possible 2, 3 or 4 C₁₋₆alkyl groups; or wherein R¹ is pyrimidinyl or pyrazinyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆ 6alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁. 20 6alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -, C_{1-6} alkyloxy(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -, aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ - and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; or wherein R¹ is pyrrolyl or pyrazolyl, each of said heterocycles optionally being substituted with 1 or where possible more, 25 such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl 6alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁. $_{6}$ alkyl)amino C_{1-6} alkyl, polyhalo C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkylcarbonylamino, C_{1-6} alkyl- SO_{2} - NR^{5c} -, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -, $C_{1.6}$ alkyloxy(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -, aryl $C_{1.6}$ alkyloxy(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ - and 30 mono-or di(C1-6alkyl)amino(-CH2-CH2-O)n-; or

Q is a radical of formula (b-1); (b-2); (b-3); (b-4); (b-5); (b-7); (b-8); (b-6) wherein v is 3; or (b-6) wherein v is 2, wherein Y¹ is -CH(NR²R⁴)-, wherein X² is a direct bond or C(=O), or X² is a direct bond, C(=O), NR⁴, C₁₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, NR⁴-C₁₋₄alkyl, wherein R¹ is pyridyl, pyrimidinyl or pyrazinyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino,

cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_nand mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; or wherein R¹ is imidazolyl being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C1-6alkyloxy, C1-6alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyl-10 carbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)- $NR^{5c}R^{5d}$, $HO(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-}$, halo $(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-}$, C_{1-6} alkyloxy $(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-}$, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, or imidazolyl being substituted with 2 or 3 C₁₋₆alkyl groups; or wherein R¹ is pyridazinyl. pyrrolyl, or pyrazolyl, each of said heterocycles optionally being substituted with 1 or 15 where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂- NR^{5c} -, aryl-SO₂- NR^{5c} -, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)- $NR^{5c}R^{5d}$, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)₀-, 20 $halo(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-},\ C_{1-6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-},\ arylC_{1-6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-}$ and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; or

Q is a radical of formula (b-1); (b-2); (b-3); (b-4); (b-5); (b-7); (b-8); (b-6) wherein v is 2; or (b-6) wherein v is 3, Y^1 is $-CH(NR^2R^4)$ -, wherein X^2 is C(=O) or X^2 is C(=O), NR⁴, C₁₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, NR⁴-C₁₋₄alkyl, and wherein R¹ is pyridyl or imidazolyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁. 6alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, 30 C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)₀-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)₀-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-CH₂-O)₀-, O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, or each of said heterocycles being substituted with, where possible 2, 3 or 4 C₁₋₆alkyl groups; or wherein R¹ is pyrimidinyl or pyrazinyl, each of said heterocycles being 35 substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cvano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio,

 $C_{1\text{-}6}alkyloxyC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl, arylC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl, arylC_{1\text{-}6}alkyloxy, hydroxyC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl, mono-or di(C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl)aminoC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl, polyhaloC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl, C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl-carbonylamino, C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl-SO_2-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO_2-NR^{5c}-, C_{1\text{-}6}alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n-, halo(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n-, C_{1\text{-}6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n-,$

arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, naio(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; or wherein R¹ is pyrrolyl or pyrazolyl, each of said heterocycles optionally being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyl-carbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-,

arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-.

Preferred compounds are

(±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-1Hbenzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride monohydrate;

2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl-3-pyridinol;

- 20 (\pm)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(1,4-dimethyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate;
 - (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;
 - $(\pm)-2-[[2-[(3-amino-2-hydroxypropyl)amino]-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-6$
- 25 3-pyridinol;
 - N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[[3-(2-ethoxyethoxy)-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl]methyl]-IH-benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride dihydrate; (\pm)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-chloro-1,4-dimethyl-IH-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-IH-benzimidazol-2-amine;
- 30 (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(2-chloro-1,4-dimethyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine;
 - (\pm)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-methyl-1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-IH-benzimidazol-2-amine;
 - $(\pm)-N-[1-(2-aminopropyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyl]-1H-(2-aminopropyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyl]-1H-(2-aminopropyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyl]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethyll)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethyll)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethyll)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethyll)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethyll)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethyll)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethyll)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethyll)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethyll)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethyll)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethyll)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethyll)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethyll)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethyll)methyll]-1H-(3,5,6-trimethyll)$
- benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine;

N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[[3-(2-chloroethoxy)-6-methyl-2pyridinyl]methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; (\pm) -N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[3-amino-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-1Hbenzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate;

the prodrugs, N-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms thereof.

Most preferred are

35

2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1-

- yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride; 10
 - (\pm) -2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-3H-imidazo[4,5b]pyridin-3-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol;
 - 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-6-chloro-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride 2-propanolate (1:1);
- (\pm) -2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-IH-15 benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol;
 - (\pm) -2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminopropyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride trihydrate;
 - 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1-
- yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride dihydrate; 20
 - 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-6-bromo-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride;
 - 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride monohydrate;
- (\pm) -2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-IH-benzimidazol-1-25 yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol; and
 - (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine.
- the prodrugs, N-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms thereof. 30

In general, compounds of formula (I') can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (II-a) or (II-b), wherein P represents a protecting group, such as, for example C₁₋₄alkyloxycarbonyl, or those protecting groups mentioned in Chapter 7 of 'Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis' by T Greene and P. Wuyts (John Wiley & Sons Inc., 1991), with an intermediate of formula (III), wherein W₁ is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, bromo, in the presence of a suitable base, such as, e.g.

15

20

sodium hydride, disodium carbonate. Said reaction can be performed in a reaction-inert solvent, such as N,N-dimethylformamide.

Compounds of formula (I') wherein, in the definition of Q, R² or at least one R⁶ substituent is hydrogen, said Q being represented by H-Q₁, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a), can be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (IV) wherein P represents a protecting group, for example C₁.

4alkyloxycarbonyl, benzyl, or those protecting groups mentioned in Chapter 7 of 'Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis' by T Greene and P. Wuyts (John Wiley & Sons Inc., 1991).

$$P = Q_1 = \begin{bmatrix} R^1 \\ N \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a^1 \\ a^2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} A^2 \\ A^3 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$(IV)$$

$$H = Q_1 \begin{bmatrix} A^1 \\ N \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} A^1 \\ A^2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} A^2 \\ A^3 \end{bmatrix}$$

When P represents, for example, C₁₋₄alkyloxycarbonyl, said deprotection reaction can be performed by, for example, acidic hydrolysis in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrobromic, hydrochloric, sulfuric, acetic, or trifluoroacetic acid or a mixture of said acids, or by alkaline hydrolysis in the presence of a suitable base, such as, for example potassium hydroxide, in a suitable solvent such as water, alcohol, a mixture of water-alcohol, methylene chloride. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, 1-butanol and the like. In order to enhance the rate of the reaction, it is advantageous to heat the reaction mixture, in particular up to the reflux temperature. Alternatively, when P represents, for example, benzyl, the deprotection reaction can be performed by catalytic hydrogenation in the presence of hydrogen and an appropriate catalyst in a reaction-inert solvent. A suitable catalyst in the above reaction is, for

į

example, platinum-on-charcoal, palladium-on-charcoal, and the like. An appropriate reaction-inert solvent for said reaction is, for example, an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like, an ester, e.g. ethylacetate and the like, an acid, e.g. acetic acid and the like.

5

The catalytic hydrogenation reaction described above can also be used to prepare a compound of formula (I'-a) by deprotecting and reducing an intermediate of formula (IV) wherein Q_1 comprises an unsaturated bond, said Q_1 being represented by $Q_{1a}(CH=CH)$, and said intermediate being represented by formula (IV-a).

10

Compounds of formula (I') wherein, in the definition of Q, both R⁶ substituents are hydrogen or R² and R⁴ are both hydrogen, said Q being represented by H₂N-Q₂, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-1), can also be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (V).

15

Said deprotection reaction can be performed in the presence of a suitable base such as, for example hydrazine, or in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid and the like, in a suitable solvent, such as an alcohol, acetic acid and the like.

20

Compounds of formula (I'-a-1) can also be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VI) according to the procedure described for the preparation of compounds of formula (I'-a).

$$P = Q_{2} = \begin{pmatrix} R^{1} & & & \\$$

10

15

20

Compounds of formula (I'-a) or (I'-a-1), wherein Q_1 or Q_2 comprise a hydroxy substituent, said Q_1 or Q_2 being represented by Q_1 (OH) or Q_2 (OH), and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-2) or (I'-a-1-1), can be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VII) or (VIII) as described hereinabove for the preparation of compounds of formula (I'-a).

Compounds of formula (I') wherein, in the definition of Q, both R⁶ substituents are hydrogen or R² and R⁴ are both hydrogen, and the carbon adjacent to the nitrogen carrying the R⁶ or R² and R⁴ substituents, contains at least one hydrogen, said Q being represented by H₂N-Q₃H, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-1-2) can also be obtained by reductive amination of intermediates of formula (IX) in the presence of a suitable amination reagent, such as, for example, ammonia, hydroxylamine, or benzylamine, and in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, e.g. hydrogen, and an appropriate catalyst. An appropriate catalyst in the above reaction is, for example, platinum-on-charcoal, palladium-on-charcoal, rhodium-on-Al₂O₃, and the like, optionally in the presence of a catalyst poison, such as a thiophene solution. A suitable reaction-inert solvent for the above reaction is, for example, an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like.

$$(O \Longrightarrow) Q_3 \xrightarrow{N} \begin{array}{c} A^1 \\ A^2 \\ A^3 \end{array} \qquad \text{amination} \qquad H_2 N \longrightarrow Q_3 H \xrightarrow{N} \begin{array}{c} A^1 \\ A^2 \\ A^3 \end{array}$$

$$(IX) \qquad (I'-a-1-2)$$

Compounds of formula (I'), wherein Q comprises a -CH₂NH₂ moiety, said Q being represented by H₂N-CH₂-Q₄, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-1-3) can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (X).

NC-Q₄

$$\stackrel{Q}{=}$$
 $\stackrel{A^1}{=}$
 $\stackrel{A^2}{=}$
 $\stackrel{A^2}{=}$

Said reduction can be performed with a suitable reducing agent, such as lithium aluminium hydride or hydrogen, optionally in the presence of a suitable catalyst, such as Raney Nickel. A suitable solvent for the above reaction is, for example, tetrahydrofuran, or a solution of ammonia in an alcohol. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like. Said reduction reaction performed in a solution of ammonia in an alcohol can also be used to prepare compounds of formula (I'-a-1-3), wherein R¹ is substituted with C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, said R¹ being represented by R^{1'}-C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-1-3-1) starting from an intermediate of formula (X-a).

Compounds of formula (I'), wherein Q comprises a -CH₂-CHOH-CH₂-NH₂ moiety, said Q being represented by H₂N-CH₂-CHOH-CH₂-Q₄, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-1-3-2), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XI) with ammonia in the presence of a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol, e.g. methanol.

Compounds of formula (I'), wherein, in the definition of Q, R² or one R⁶ substituent is formyl, said Q being represented by H-C(=O)-Q₁, and said compounds being

represented by formula (I'-b), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XII) with formic acid, formamide and ammonia.

$$C_{1^{-4}alkyl} - C_{1^{-4}alkyl} - C_{1^{-4}a$$

Compounds of formula (I'), wherein, in the definition of Q, R² is other than hydrogen, said R² being represented by R^{2a}, R⁴ is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R² and R⁴ substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, said Q being represented by R^{2a}-NH-HQ₅, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-c), can be prepared by reductive amination of an intermediate of formula (XIII) with an intermediate of formula (XIV) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as hydrogen, and a suitable catalyst, such as palladium-on-charcoal, platinum-on-charcoal, and the like. A suitable reaction-inert solvent for the above reaction is, for example, an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like.

10

20

$$(O=)Q_{5} \xrightarrow{R^{1}} A^{2} A^{2} A^{3} + R^{2a} \longrightarrow NH_{2} A^{2a} \longrightarrow R^{2a} \longrightarrow NH \longrightarrow R^{2a}$$

Compounds of formula (I'-c), wherein R^{2a} represents C_{1-10} alkyl substituted with $N(R^6)_2$ and with hydroxy, and the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, carries also two hydrogen atoms, said R^{2a} being represented by $[(C_{1.9}alkyl)CH_2OH]-N(R^6)_2$, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-c-1), can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (XV) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as lithium aluminium hydride, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as tetrahydrofuran.

$$(R^{6})_{2}N \xrightarrow{(C_{1}-9alkyl)-NH} HQ_{5} = R^{1}$$

Compounds of formula (I') wherein, in the definition of Q, R^2 or one R^6 substituent is hydrogen, said Q being represented by H- Q_1 , and wherein R^1 is a monocyclic heterocycle substituted with 1 or more substituents selected from hydroxy,

10

15

hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, or HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, said substituents being represented by formula A-OH, said R¹ being represented by R^{1a}-(A-OH)_w, with w being the amount of substituents on R^{1a} ranging from 1 to 4, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-d), can be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XVI) with a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid and the like, optionally in the presence of a suitable solvent, such as an alcohol. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like.

Alternatively, one protecting group may also protect more than one substituent of R^{1a} , said protecting group being represented by P_1 , as represented by formula (XVI-a). The two ways of protecting the substituents of R^{1a} , i.e. with a separate, as in formula (XVI), or a combined, as in formula (XVI-a), protecting group, may also be combined in the same intermediate, as represented by formula (XVI-b).

Compounds of formula (I'), wherein Q is a radical of formula (b-2), said compounds being represented by formula (I'-e), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XVII) with an intermediate of formula (XVIII) in the presence of sodium

10

20

25

cyanide and a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol, e.g. methanol and the like.

$$C_{1^{-4}alkyl} - O - C_{-Alk} - X^{1} - Alk - X^{1} - A$$

Compounds of formula (I'), wherein in the definition of Q, X² is C₂₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, said Q being represented by Q₆N-CH₂-C₁₋₃alkyl-NR⁴, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-p), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XIX) with an intermediate of formula (XX) in the presence of isopropyl titanate (TV) and a suitable reducing agent, such as NaBH₃CN, and in the presence of a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as methylene chloride or an alcohol, e.g. ethanol.

$$\begin{array}{c} O \\ H - C - C_{1-3}alkyl - NR^4 \\ & & \\ &$$

ompounds of formula (I') may be converted into each other following art-known functional group transformation reactions, comprising those described hereinafter.

The compounds of formula (I') may be converted to the corresponding N-oxide forms following art-known procedures for converting a trivalent nitrogen into its N-oxide form. Said N-oxidation reaction may generally be carried out by reacting the starting material of formula (I') with an appropriate organic or inorganic peroxide. Appropriate inorganic peroxides comprise, for example, hydrogen peroxide, alkali metal or earth alkaline metal peroxides, e.g. sodium peroxide, potassium peroxide; appropriate organic peroxides may comprise peroxy acids such as, for example, benzenecarboperoxoic acid or halo substituted benzenecarboperoxoic acid, e.g. 3-chlorobenzenecarboperoxoic acid, peroxoalkanoic acids, e.g. peroxoacetic acid, alkylhydroperoxides, e.g. t.butyl hydro-peroxide. Suitable solvents are, for example, water, lower alcohols, e.g. ethanol and the like, hydrocarbons, e.g. toluene, ketones, e.g. 2-butanone, halogenated hydrocarbons, e.g. dichloromethane, and mixtures of such solvents.

15

20

Compounds of formula (I'), wherein R¹ is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, said R¹ being represented by R¹-C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-f), can be prepared by esterification of a compound of formula (I'-g) in the presence of a suitable alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, propanol, butanol, pentanol, hexanol and the like, and in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid and the like.

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} R^{1} - C(=0)OH \\ Q \\ N \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a^{1} & esterification \\ A & a^{2} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} R^{1} - C(=0)OC_{1} - 6alkyl \\ Q & N \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A^{1} & A^{2} \\ A^{2} & A^{3} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(I'-g) \qquad (I'-f)$$

Compounds of formula (I'-a) may be converted into compounds of formula (I'), wherein, in the definition of Q, R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is other than hydrogen, said R^2 or R^6 being represented by Z_1 , said Q being represented by Z_1 - Q_1 , and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-h), by reaction with a reagent of formula (XXI), wherein W_2 is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. bromo, or 4-methylbenzenesulphonate, in the presence of a suitable base, such as, for example disodium carbonate, dipotassium carbonate, sodium hydroxide and the like, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. 3-methyl-2-butanone, acetonitrile, N,N-dimethylformamide.

Compounds of formula (I'-h), wherein, in the definition of Z₁, R² is CH₂-C_{1.9}alkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂, said compounds being represented by formula (I'-h-1), can also be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a) wherein, in the definition of H-Q₁, R² is hydrogen, said H-Q₁ being represented by H-Q_{1b}, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-3), with an intermediate of formula (XXII), in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as sodium cyanoborohydride, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol.

10

15

Compounds of formula (I'-h), wherein Z₁ comprises formyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonyl, or C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, said Z₁ being represented by Z_{1a}, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-h-2), can be converted into compounds of formula (I'-a), by acidic hydrolysis in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrobromic, hydrochloric, sulfuric, acetic, or trifluoroacetic acid or a mixture of said acids, or by alkaline hydrolysis in the presence of a suitable base, such as, for example potassium hydroxide, in a suitable solvent such as water, alcohol, a mixture of water-alcohol, methylene chloride. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, 1-butanol, sec. butanol and the like. In order to enhance the rate of the reaction, it is advantageous to work at elevated temperatures.

$$Z_{1a}$$
 Q_1 Q_1 Q_1 Q_1 Q_1 Q_1 Q_1 Q_1 Q_1 Q_2 Q_1 Q_2 Q_3 Q_4 Q

Compounds of formula (I'-b) can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a) with formic acid.

$$H = Q_{1} = \begin{bmatrix} R^{1} & & & \\$$

Compounds of formula (I') wherein R^1 is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with hydroxy, said R^1 being represented by HO- R^1 , and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-i), can be prepared by deprotecting a compound of formula (I'-j), wherein R^1 is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with C_{1-6} alkyloxy or aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy, said C_{1-6} alkyl or aryl C_{1-6} alkyl being represented by Z_2 , and said R^1 being represented by Z_2 -O- R^1 . Said deprotection can be performed in a reaction-inert solvent, such as, for

example methylene chloride, in the presence of a suitable deprotecting agent, e.g. tribromoborane.

Compounds of formula (I') wherein R¹ is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n, said compounds being represented by formula (I'-k), can be converted into a compound of formula (I'-l-1) or (I'-l-2) by reaction with the appropriate amine of formula (XXIII) or (XXIV) in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

Compounds of formula (I'), wherein R¹ is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with halo, said compounds being represented by formula (I'-m) can be converted into compounds of formula (I') by reaction with 1-butanethiol in the presence of palladium-on-charcoal and CaO in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as tetrahydrofuran.

WO 01/00611 PCT/EP00/05676

-29-

Q
$$(\Gamma-m)$$
 (Γ)

Compounds of formula (I') wherein a hydrogen atom in the radicals of formula (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) or (a-5) is replaced by nitro, said compounds being represented by formula (I'-n) may be reduced to a compound of formula (I'-o) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable catalyst, such as platinum-on-charcoal, and optionally in the presence of a suitable catalyst poison, e.g. a thiophene solution. The reaction may be performed in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol.

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} R^1 & & & & \\ & & & & \\ N & & & \frac{1}{4^3}NO_2 & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & \\ & & & \\$$

15

20

The reactions described hereinabove for the preparation of the compounds of formula (I') can also be used to prepare the compounds of the group (I'').

In the following paragraphs, there are described several methods of preparing the intermediates in the foregoing preparations. A number of intermediates and starting materials are commercially available or are known compounds which may be prepared according to conventional reaction procedures generally known in the art or analogous to the procedures described in EP-A-0,005,318, EP-A-0,099,139, EP-A-0,151,824, EP-A-0,151,826, EP-A-0,232,937, EP-A-0,295,742, EP-A-0,297,661, EP-A-0,539,420, EP-A-0,539,421, US 4,634,704, US 4,695,569.

In the foregoing and the following preparations, the reaction mixture is worked up following art-known methods and the reaction product is isolated and, if necessary, further purified.

Intermediates of formula (III) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXV) with a suitable leaving group, i.e. W₁, introducing agent, e.g. 1-halo-

15

20

25

2,5-pyrrolidinedione, in the presence of dibenzoyl peroxide, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrachloromethane.

Intermediates of formula (XXV), wherein R¹ is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with chloro, said R¹ being represented by Cl-R^{1'} and said intermediates being represented by formula (XXV-a), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXVI), wherein (O=)R^{1b}H is defined as a carbonyl derivative of R^{1'} wherein one carbon or nitrogen, adjacent to the carbonyl, carries at least one hydrogen, with phosphorus oxychloride. Intermediates of formula (XXVI) may also react as their enol tautomeric forms.

$$(O=)R^{1b}H - G - H$$
 $POCl_3$ $Cl - R^1 - G - H$ $(XXV-a)$

Intermediates of formula (III) wherein W_I is chloro, which is attached to a carbon atom carrying at least one hydrogen, said G being represented by G_IH, and said intermediates being represented by formula (III-a), can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXVII) with thionylchloride in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. methylene chloride.

$$R^1$$
— G_1H — OH SOCI₂ R^1 — G_1H — C (III-a)

Intermediates of formula (XXVII) can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (XXVIII) in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, e.g. sodium borohydride.

$$R^{1} \longrightarrow G_{1}(=O) \xrightarrow{\text{reduction}} R^{1} \longrightarrow G_{1}H \longrightarrow OH$$
(XXVIII) (XXVIII)

Alternatively, intermediates of formula (XXVII) can also be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XXIX), wherein P is a suitable protecting group, e.g. C_{1-4} alkylcarbonyl, in a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. sodium hydroxide.

15

$$R^1$$
— G_1H — O — P R^1 — G_1H — OH

(XXVII)

Intermediates of formula (XXVIII), wherein $G_1(=0)$ is CH(=0), said intermediates being represented by formula (XXVIII-a), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXX), wherein W_3 is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. bromo, with N_1N_2 -dimethylformamide in the presence of butyllithium in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, diethylether or a mixture thereof.

$$R^1 - W_3$$
 $R^1 - CH(=0)$ (XXVIII-a)

Intermediates of formula (IV) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXI-a) or (XXXI-b), wherein P represents a suitable protecting group, such as, for example, C₁₋₄alkyloxycarbonyl, with an intermediate of formula (III) according to the reaction described for the general preparation of compounds of formula (I').

Intermediates of formula (IV) can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXII-a) with an intermediate of formula (XXXII) that has reacted with methanesulfonyl chloride, in the presence of a suitable base, such as sodium hydride, and in the presence of a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. N,N-dimethylformamide.

$$P = Q_{1} = \begin{bmatrix} A_{1} & A_{2} & A_{3} & A_{4} & A_{3} & A_{4} & A_{4}$$

Intermediates of formula (IV) can also be prepared by a cyclization reaction of an intermediate of formula (XXXIII) in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol or N,N-dimethylformamide, in the presence of mercury oxide and sulphur.

$$P = Q_{1} = \begin{bmatrix} C - R^{1} & Cyclization \\ NH & a^{1} & a^{2} \\ S & Cyclization \end{bmatrix}$$

$$P = Q_{1} = \begin{bmatrix} C - NH & A^{1} & A^{2} \\ N & A^{2} & A^{2} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$(IV)$$

Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein Q₁ comprises an unsaturated bond, said Q₁ being represented by Q_{1a}(CH=CH), and said intermediates by formula (IV-a), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXIV) with an intermediate of formula (III) in the presence of a suitable base, such as dipotassium carbonate.

$$P-Q_{1a}(CH=CH) \xrightarrow{N} a_{4}^{1} a_{3}^{2} + R^{1}-G-W_{1} \xrightarrow{P-Q_{1a}(CH=CH)} N \xrightarrow{N} a_{4}^{1} a_{3}^{2}$$

$$(XXXIV) \qquad (III) \qquad (IV-a)$$

Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein, in the definition of Q₁, the X¹ or X² moieties in the radicals of formula (b-1) to (b-8) represent NH, said Q₁ being represented by Q_{1c}-NH, and said intermediates by formula (IV-b), may also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXV) with an intermediate of formula (XXXVI).

halo
$$= \begin{pmatrix} R^1 \\ Q \\ N \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A^1 \\ A^2 \\ A^3 \end{pmatrix} + P + Q_{1c} - NH_2 + P + Q_{1c} - NH_2 + P + Q_{1c} - NH_2 + Q_{1c} - Q_{1c} - NH_2 + Q_{1c} - Q_{1c} - NH_2 + Q_{1c} - Q_{$$

Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein R¹ is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with amino or mono- or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, said R¹ being represented by R^{5a}R^{5b}N-R¹, wherein R^{5a} and R^{5b} are defined as described hereinabove, and said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-c), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXVII) with an appropriate amine, represented by formula (XXXVIII), in the presence of an appropriate catalyst, e.g. palladium, and (R)-(+)-2,2'-bis(diphenyl-phosphino)-1,1'-binaphtyl, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

WO 01/00611

10

15

halo—
$$R^{1'}$$
 R^{5b}
 R^{5b}
 R^{5b}
 R^{5a}
 R^{5a}
 R^{5b}
 R^{5a}
 R^{5a}

Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein R¹ is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with C(=O)-NR^{5a}R^{5b}, wherein R^{5a} and R^{5b} are defined as described hereinabove, said R¹ being represented by R^{5a}R^{5b}N-C(=O)-R¹, and said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-d), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXVII) with an appropriate amine, represented by formula (XXXVIII), under an atmosphere of carbon monoxide, in the presence of a suitable catalyst, e.g. palladium (II) acetate, and 1,3-bis(diphenylphosphino)propane, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

halo
$$\mathbb{R}^{1}$$
 \mathbb{R}^{5a} \mathbb{N} \mathbb{N}

Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein P-Q₁ comprises C_{1-10} alkyl or C_{3-7} cycloalkyl substituted with NR⁶-P, said C_{1-10} alkyl or C_{3-7} cycloalkyl being represented by Z_3 , said P-Q₁ being represented by P-N R⁶-Z₃-Q_{1b}, and said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-e), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a-3) with an intermediate of formula (XXXIX), wherein W_4 represents a suitable leaving group, such as p-toluenesulphonate. Said reaction can be performed in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. acetonitrile, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate.

$$H-Q_{1b} \xrightarrow{R^{1}} A^{2} + P \xrightarrow{R^{6}} Z_{3} - W_{4} \longrightarrow P \xrightarrow{R^{6}} Z_{3} - Q_{1b} \xrightarrow{N} A^{2} A^{2}$$

$$(I'-a-3) \qquad (XXXIX) \qquad (IV-e)$$

Intermediates of formula (IV-e), wherein R⁶ is hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, said intermediates

being represented by formula (IV-e-1), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of

WO 01/00611 PCT/EP00/05676

formula (XL) with an intermediate of formula (XLI) in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate, and a suitable solvent, e.g. acetonitrile.

$$Q = \begin{bmatrix} Q & Q_{1b} &$$

Intermediates of formula (XXXI-a) or (XXXI-b) can be prepared by protecting an intermediate of formula (XLII) with a suitable protecting group, such as, for example, C₁₋₄alkyloxycarbonyl, in a reaction-inert solvent, such as methylene chloride or an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like, in the presence of a suitable reagent, e.g. diC₁₋₄alkyldicarbonate, and optionally in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. sodium acetate.

10

Alternatively, intermediates of formula (XXXI-a) or (XXXI-b) can be converted into an intermediate of formula (XLII) by reaction with a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid or hydrobromic acid and the like or mixtures thereof, in the presence of a suitable solvent, e.g. water.

15

20

Intermediates of formula (XXXI-a) or (XXXI-b), wherein in the definition of Q_1 , the X^1 or X^2 moieties in the radicals of formula (b-1) to (b-8) represent NH, said Q_1 being represented by Q_{1c} -NH, and said intermediates by formula (XXXI-a-1) or (XXXI-b-1), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLIII-a) or (XLIII-b), wherein W_5 represents a suitable leaving group, such as for example a halo atom, e.g. chloro, with an intermediate of formula (XLIV).

$$W_{5} = \begin{pmatrix} & & & & \\$$

Intermediates of formula (XLIII-a) or (XLIII-b) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLV-a) or (XLV-b) with $H_2P(=O)(W_5)_3$ in the presence of a suitable acid, e.g. hydrochloric acid.

$$O = \bigvee_{N=1}^{H} \bigvee_{a=1}^{A_1} \bigvee_{a=1}^{A_2} \bigvee_{a=1}^{H_2P(=O)(W_5)_3} \bigvee_{N=1}^{H} \bigvee_{a=1}^{A_1} \bigvee_{a=1}^{A_2} \bigvee_$$

Intermediates of formula (XLV-a) or (XLV-b) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLVI-a) or (XLVI-b) with an intermediate of formula (XLVII).

Intermediates of formula (XXXI-a) can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLVI-a) with P-Q₁-C(=NH)-O-CH₂-CH₃ in a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol.

$$\begin{array}{c} H_2N \\ H_2N \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} a^1 \\ a^2 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} P \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} NH \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} P \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} A^1 \\ A^2 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} A^2 \\ A^3 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} A^3 \\ \end{array} \begin{array}$$

Intermediates of formula (XXXIII) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLVIII) with an intermediate of formula P-Q₁=C=S, which is synthesized according to the procedures described in EP 0005318, in a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol, e.g. ethanol. To increase the reaction rate, the reaction may be performed at elevated temperatures.

$$R^{1}-G-NH-1 = A^{2} = A^{2} + P-Q_{1}-C-S$$

$$(XLVIII)$$

$$P-Q_{1}-C-NH-1 = A^{2} = A^{2}$$

$$(XXXIII)$$

Intermediates of formula (XLVIII) can be obtained by reducing an intermediate of formula (IL) in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, e.g. hydrogen, and an appropriate catalyst, e.g. Raney Nickel.

$$R^1$$
— G — NH a^1 a^2 a^2 a^3 NH_2 a^4 a^3 (XLVIII)

10

20

Intermediates of formula (IL) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (L) with an intermediate of formula (LI), in which W₆ represents a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro. The reaction may be performed in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. acetonitrile, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate.

$$R^{1}$$
— G — NH_{2} + $O_{2}N$
 A_{3}
 $O_{2}N$
 A_{4}
 A_{3}

15

20

Intermediates of formula (L) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LII) with a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid, in the presence of a suitable solvent, e.g. an alcohol, e.g. ethanol.

$$R^{1} - G - N \xrightarrow{\stackrel{H}{C} = O} \qquad \qquad R^{1} - G - NH_{2}$$

$$(LII)$$

$$(LII)$$

Intermediates of formula (LII) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (III) with NaN[C(=O)H]₂.

$$R^{\perp}G-W_1$$
 + NaN[C(=O)H]₂ $R^{\perp}G-N$ $C=O$ (III)

Intermediates of formula (IL) can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LII) with an intermediate of formula (LIII) (J. Org. Chem., 25, p 1138, 1960) in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. N,N-dimethylformamide, in the presence of an appropriate base, e.g. sodium hydride.

$$R^{1} - G - NH - C - H + O_{2}N - A_{3}^{2} - A_{3}^{2} - C - NH - A_{3}^{2} - A_{3}^{2} - C - NH - A_{3}^{2} -$$

Intermediates of formula (XXXIV) can be prepared by dehydrating an intermediate of formula (LIV) with a suitable acid, such as sulfuric acid.

$$P-Q_{1a}(CH_{2}-CHOH) \longrightarrow N \longrightarrow a^{1 \atop a^{2}} \qquad P-Q_{1a}(CH=CH) \longrightarrow N \longrightarrow a^{1 \atop a^{2}} \qquad (XXXIV)$$

Intermediates of formula (LIV) wherein, in the definition of Q_{1a} , the X^1 or X^2 moieties are CH_2 , said Q_{1a} being represented by Q_{1a} , and said intermediates being represented by formula (LIV-a), can be prepared by reacting a carbonyl moiety of formula (LV) with an intermediate of formula (LVI) in the presence of N,N-diisopropylamine and butyl lithium, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

$$P = Q_{1a'}(CH_2-C=0) + CH_3 = Q_{1a'}(CH_2-CHOH) = CH_2 = Q_{1a'}(CH_2-CHOH) = CH_2 = Q_{1a'}(CH_2-CHOH) = Q_{1$$

Intermediates of formula (V) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LVII) with 1*H*-isoindole-1,3 (2*H*)-dione in the presence of triphenylphosphine and diethyl azodicarboxylate.

$$HO-Q_{2} \xrightarrow{R^{1}} A^{2} \xrightarrow{a^{1}} A^{2} \xrightarrow{a^{2}} A^{3} \xrightarrow{R^{1}} A^{2} \xrightarrow{A^{2}} A^{3} \xrightarrow{A^{2}} A$$

Intermediates of formula (V) may also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LVIII) with 1H-isoindole-1,3 (2H)-dione in the presence of a suitable base, such as sodium hydride, and a suitable solvent, such as N, N-dimethylformamide.

Intermediates of formula (LVIII) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LVII) with an intermediate of formula (LIX), wherein W₇ represents a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, in the presence of a suitable base, such as N, N - diethyl-ethanamine, and a suitable solvent, such as methylene chloride.

$$HO-Q_{2} \xrightarrow[N]{} \stackrel{a^{1}}{\underset{a^{4}}{}} \stackrel{a^{2}}{\underset{a^{3}}{}} + Q_{2} \xrightarrow[C_{1-4}alkyl]{} \stackrel{O}{\underset{C_{1-4}alkyl}{}} - Q_{2} \xrightarrow[N]{} \stackrel{a^{1}}{\underset{a^{4}}{}} \stackrel{a^{2}}{\underset{a^{3}}{}}$$

$$(LVIII) \qquad (LIX) \qquad (LVIIII)$$

Intermediates of formula (V), wherein in the definition of Q_2 , R^2 is C_{1-10} alkyl, said Q_2 being represented by C_{1-10} alkyl- Q_{1b} , and said intermediates by formula (V-a), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a-3) with an intermediate of formula (LX), wherein W_8 is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, in the presence of a suitable base, such as dipotassium carbonate, and a suitable solvent, such as acetonitrile.

$$H = Q_{16} = \begin{pmatrix} R^1 \\ N = A^1 \\ A^2 = A^2 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} N = C_{1-10} \\ N$$

Intermediates of formula (LVII) wherein, in the definition of Q_2 , the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, also carries two hydrogen atoms, said HO- Q_2 being represented by HO- CH_2 - Q_2 , and said intermediates being represented by formula (LVII-a), can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (LXI) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as lithium aluminium hydride, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

$$C_{1^{-4}alkyl-O-C(=O)} - Q_2 - N - A_{1} - A_{2} - A_{3} - A_{2} - A_{2} - A_{2} - A_{3} - A_{2} - A_{3} - A_{2} - A_{3} - A_{2} - A_{3} -$$

Intermediates of formula (LVII), wherein, in the definition of Q₂, the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, carries also at least one hydrogen, said HO-Q₂ being represented by HO-Q₃H, and said intermediates being represented by formula (LVII-b), can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (IX) with a suitable reducing agent, e.g. sodium borohydride, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol.

10

15

Intermediates of formula (VI) wherein, in the definition of Q_2 , R^2 is C_{1-10} alkyl substituted with $N(P)_2$ and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R^2 substituent carries also at least one hydrogen atom, said Q_2 being represented by $(P)_2$ -N- C_{1-10} alkyl-NH- Q_{2a} H, and said intermediates being represented by formula (VI-a), can be prepared by reductive amination of an intermediate of formula (LXII) with an intermediate of formula (LXIII) in the presence of a suitable reductive agent, such as hydrogen, and a suitable catalyst, such as palladium-on-charcoal, platinum-on-charcoal, and the like, and optionally in the presence of a suitable catalyst poison, such as a thiophene solution. A suitable solvent in this reaction is a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol.

$$(O=)Q_{2a} \xrightarrow{N \qquad a^{1} \qquad a^{2} \qquad p} N \rightarrow C_{1-10}alkyl \rightarrow NH_{2} \rightarrow$$

Intermediates of formula (LXII) can be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (LXIV) in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid and the like, in a suitable solvent, e.g. water.

$$(LXIV)$$

$$Q_{2a}$$

$$Q$$

Intermediates of formula (IX) may be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (LXV) in the presence of a suitable acid, e.g. hydrochloric acid and the like.

PCT/EP00/05676

5

10

15

Intermediates of formula (LXV) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXVI) with an intermediate of formula (III) in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. acetonitrile.

Intermediates of formula (LXVI) wherein, in the definition of Q_3 , the X^1 or X^2 moiety of the radicals of formula (b-1) to (b-8) represent NH, said Q_3 being represented by Q_3 -NH, and said intermediates being represented by formula (LXVI-a), may be prepared by cyclizing an intermediate of formula (LXVII) in the presence of mercury oxide and sulphur, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol.

Intermediates of formula (LXVII) can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (LXVIII) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable catalyst, such as palladium-on-charcoal, platinum-on-charcoal and the like, in a suitable solvent, e.g. a mixture of ammonia in alcohol. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} & & & & \\ & &$$

Intermediates of formula (LXVIII) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXIX) with an intermediate of formula (LXXX) in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. ethanol.

Intermediates of formula (IX), wherein, in the definition of Q₃, R² comprises C₁₋₁₀alkyl, said Q₃ being represented by C₁₋₁₀alkyl-Q_{1b}, and said intermediates being represented by formula (IX-a), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a-3) with a reagent of formula (LXXI), wherein (O=)C₁₋₁₀alkyl represents a carbonyl derivative of C₁₋₁₀alkyl and wherein W₉ is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. bromo, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. acetonitrile, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate.

Intermediates of formula (X) wherein Q_4 comprises $C_{1.9}$ alkyl, said Q_4 being represented by $C_{1.9}$ alkyl- Q_{1b} , and said intermediates being represented by formula (X-a), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a-3) with a reagent of formula (LXXII), wherein W_{10} represents a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. 3-methyl-2-butanone, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate, sodium bicarbonate and the like.

$$H-Q_{1b} \xrightarrow{N \longrightarrow a^{1} \longrightarrow a^{2}} A^{2} + W_{10}-C_{1}-9alky \longrightarrow NC-C_{1}-9alky \longrightarrow NC-C_{1}-9alk$$

Intermediates of formula (X), wherein NC-Q₄ represents NC-(C_{1.9}alkyl)(R⁴)N-C(=O)-Alk-X¹, said intermediates being represented by formula (X-b), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXXIII) with an intermediate of formula (LXXIV)

in the presence of di-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl-methanone, a suitable base, such as *N*, *N* - diethyl-ethanamine, and a suitable solvent, such as methylene chloride.

HO-C-Alk-X
$$\stackrel{N}{\longrightarrow}$$
 $\stackrel{1}{\stackrel{1}{\longrightarrow}}$ $\stackrel{1}{\longrightarrow}$ $\stackrel{\longrightarrow$

Intermediates of formula (XI), wherein Q₄ represents Q_{1b}, said intermediates being represented by formula (XI-a), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a-3) with an intermediate of formula (LXXV), wherein W₁₁ represents a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, in the presence of a suitable base, such as disodium carbonate, and in the presence of a suitable solvent, such as 3-methyl-2-butanone.

$$H-Q_{1b} \xrightarrow{Q_1} A_{a}^{1} A_{a}^{2} + CH_2-W_{11} \xrightarrow{Q_1} CH_2-Q_{1b} \xrightarrow{N} A_{a}^{1} A_{a}^{2}$$

$$(I'-a-3) \qquad (LXXV) \qquad (XI-a)$$

10

15

20

Intermediates of formula (XIX) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXXVI) with a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid.

Pure stereochemically isomeric forms of the compounds of formula (I) may be obtained by the application of art-known procedures. Diastereomers may be separated by

physical methods such as selective crystallization and chromatographic techniques, e.g., counter-current distribution, liquid chromatography and the like.

The compounds of formula (I) as prepared in the hereinabove described processes are generally racemic mixtures of enantiomers which can be separated from one another following art-known resolution procedures. The racemic compounds of formula (I) which are sufficiently basic or acidic may be converted into the corresponding diastereomeric salt forms by reaction with a suitable chiral acid, respectively chiral base.

Said diastereomeric salt forms are subsequently separated, for example, by selective or fractional crystallization and the enantiomers are liberated therefrom by alkali or acid. An alternative manner of separating the enantiomeric forms of the compounds of formula (I) involves liquid chromatography, in particular liquid chromatography using a chiral stationary phase. Said pure stereochemically isomeric forms may also be derived from the corresponding pure stereochemically isomeric forms of the appropriate starting materials, provided that the reaction occurs stereospecifically. Preferably if a specific stereoisomer is desired, said compound will be synthesized by stereospecific methods of preparation. These methods will advantageously employ enantiomerically pure starting materials.

The compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') or any subgroup thereof, show antiviral properties. Viral infections treatable using the compounds and methods of the present invention include those infections brought on by ortho- and paramyxoviruses and in particular by human and bovine respiratory syncytial virus (RSV).

10

15

20

25

30

35

The *in vitro* antiviral activity against RSV of the present compounds was tested in a test as described in the experimental part of the description, and may also be demonstrated in a virus yield reduction assay. The *in vivo* antiviral activity against RSV of the present compounds may be demonstrated in a test model using cotton rats as described in Wyde et al. (Antiviral Research (1998), 38, 31-42).

Due to their antiviral properties, particularly their anti-RSV properties, the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') or any subgroup thereof, their prodrugs, N-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms, are useful in the treatment of individuals experiencing a viral infection, particularly a RSV infection, and for the prophylaxis of these infections. In general, the compounds of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of warm-blooded animals infected with viruses, in particular the respiratory syncytial virus.

The compounds of formula (I') or the compounds of group (I'') or any subgroup thereof may therefore be used as medicines. In particular, the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') may be used in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment or the prevention of viral infections, especially RSV infections. The use as a medicine or method of treatment comprises the systemic administration to viral infected

subjects or to subjects susceptible to viral infections of an amount effective to combat the conditions associated with the viral infection, in particular the RSV infection.

The compounds of the present invention or any subgroup thereof may be formulated into various pharmaceutical forms for administration purposes. As appropriate compositions there may be cited all compositions usually employed for systemically administering drugs. To prepare the pharmaceutical compositions of this invention, an effective amount of the particular compound, optionally in addition salt form or as metal complex, as the active ingredient is combined in intimate admixture with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, which carrier may take a wide variety of forms depending on the form of preparation desired for administration. These pharmaceutical compositions are desirable in unitary dosage form suitable, particularly, for administration orally, rectally, percutaneously, or by parenteral injection. For example, in preparing the compositions in oral dosage form, any of the usual pharmaceutical media may be employed such as, for example, water, glycols, oils, alcohols and the like in the case of oral liquid preparations such as suspensions, syrups, elixirs, emulsions and solutions; or solid carriers such as starches, sugars, kaolin, lubricants, binders, disintegrating agents and the like in the case of powders, pills, capsules, and tablets. Because of their ease in administration, tablets and capsules represent the most advantageous oral dosage unit forms, in which case solid pharmaceutical carriers are obviously employed. For parenteral compositions, the carrier will usually comprise sterile water, at least in large part, though other ingredients, for example, to aid solubility, may be included. Injectable solutions, for example, may be prepared in which the carrier comprises saline solution, glucose solution or a mixture of saline and glucose solution. Injectable suspensions may also be prepared in which case appropriate liquid carriers, suspending agents and the like may be employed. Also included are solid form preparations which are intended to be converted, shortly before use, to liquid form preparations. In the compositions suitable for percutaneous administration, the carrier optionally comprises a penetration enhancing agent and/or a suitable wetting agent, optionally combined with suitable additives of any nature in minor proportions, which additives do not introduce a significant deleterious effect on the skin.

15

20

35

The compounds of the present invention may also be administered via oral inhalation or insufflation by means of methods and formulations employed in the art for administration via this way. Thus, in general the compounds of the present invention may be administered to the lungs in the form of a solution, a suspension or a dry powder, a solution being preferred. Any system developed for the delivery of solutions,

suspensions or dry powders via oral inhalation or insufflation are suitable for the administration of the present compounds.

Thus, the present invention also provides a pharmaceutical composition adapted for administration by inhalation or insufflation through the mouth comprising a compound of formula (I') or a compound of the group (I'') and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. Preferably, the compounds of the present invention are administered via inhalation of a solution in nebulized or aerosolized doses.

It is especially advantageous to formulate the aforementioned pharmaceutical compositions in unit dosage form for ease of administration and uniformity of dosage. Unit dosage form as used herein refers to physically discrete units suitable as unitary dosages, each unit containing a predetermined quantity of active ingredient calculated to produce the desired therapeutic effect in association with the required pharmaceutical carrier. Examples of such unit dosage forms are tablets (including scored or coated tablets), capsules, pills, powder packets, suppositories, wafers, injectable solutions or suspensions and the like, and segregated multiples thereof.

10

15

20

30

35

In general it is contemplated that an antivirally effective daily amount would be from 0.01 mg/kg to 500 mg/kg body weight, more preferably from 0.1 mg/kg to 50 mg/kg body weight. It may be appropriate to administer the required dose as two, three, four or more sub-doses at appropriate intervals throughout the day. Said sub-doses may be formulated as unit dosage forms, for example, containing 1 to 1000 mg, and in particular 5 to 200 mg of active ingredient per unit dosage form.

It may be appropriate to administer an antivirally effective daily dosage as two, three, four or more sub-doses at appropriate intervals throughout the day. Said sub-doses may be formulated as unit dosage forms.

The exact dosage and frequency of administration depends on the particular compound of formula (I), (I') or a compound of group (I'') used, the particular condition being treated, the severity of the condition being treated, the age, weight, sex, extent of disorder and general physical condition of the particular patient as well as other medication the individual may be taking, as is well known to those skilled in the art. Furthermore, it is evident that said effective daily amount may be lowered or increased depending on the response of the treated subject and/or depending on the evaluation of the physician prescribing the compounds of the instant invention. The effective daily amount ranges mentioned hereinabove are therefore only guidelines.

20

Also, the combination of another antiviral agent and a compound of formula (I), (I') or a compound of the group (I'') can be used as a medicine. Thus, the present invention also relates to a product containing (a) a compound of formula (I), (I') or a compound of the group (I''), and (b) another antiviral compound, as a combined preparation for simultaneous, separate or sequential use in antiviral treatment. The different drugs may be combined in a single preparation together with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers. For instance, the compounds of the present invention may be combined with interferonbeta or tumor necrosis factor-alpha in order to treat or prevent RSV infections.

10 The following examples are intended to illustrate the present invention.

Experimental part

Hereinafter, "DMF" is defined as N,N-dimethylformamide, "DIPE" is defined as diisopropylether, "DMSO" is defined as dimethylsulfoxide, and "THF" is defined as tetrahydrofuran.

15 Preparation of the intermediate compounds

Example A1

a) NaOCH₃ (0.2 mol) was added to a mixture of N-(4-piperidinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine dihydrobromide (0.1 mol) in methanol (389ml), the mixture was cooled on an ice bath and stirred for 2 hours. Bis(1,1-dimethylethyl) dicarbonoate (0.1mol) was added to a cooled mixture on an ice bath and then stirred for 18 hours at room temperature. The mixture was evaporated and suspended in water/DIPE. The residue was filtered off, washed with water/DIPE and dried. The residue was boiled up in CH₃OH. Yield: 17.46g of 1,1-dimethylethyl 4-(1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinecarboxylate (55.2%) (interm. 1).

1-Bromo-2,5-pyrrolidinedione (0.055 mol) and then dibenzoyl peroxide (cat.quant.) were added to a mixture of 2,6-dimethylpyrazine (0.05 mol) in CCl₄ (100ml). The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours, stirred at room temperature under N₂ flow overnight, cooled on an ice bath and filtered. The filtrate was evaporated, to give residue 1. NaH (0.04 mol) was added to a solution of intermediate (1) (0.04 mol) in
 DMF (150ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature under N₂ flow for 1 hour. Residue 1 was dissolved in DMF (50ml) and added dropwise to the mixture. The mixture was stirred at 50°C overnight. DMF was evaporated. The residue was taken

-48-

up in H₂O and the mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH 98/2). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 6.82g of intermediate (2)(32%).

Example A2

5

10

15

20

Preparation of (interm. 3)

Reaction under N₂ flow. NaH 60% (0.02 mol) was added to a mixture of (±)-6-methyl-3-[2-[(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-2-yl)oxy]ethoxy]-2-pyridinemethanol (0.02 mol) in DMF (75ml). Methanesulfonyl chloride (0.02 mol) was added. The mixture was added at room temperature to a mixture of intermediate (1) (0.02 mol) and NaH (0.022 mol) in DMF (100ml), previously stirred at 40°C for 1 hour. The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in H₂O and CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/ (CH₃OH/NH₃) 97/3). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 3.52g of intermediate (3) (31%).

Example A3

2-Chloro-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazole (0.0615 mol) and ethyl 4-aminohexahydro-1*H*-azepine-1-carboxylate (0.123 mol) were stirred at 160°C for 3 hours. H₂O was added and the mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (13.6g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH2Cl2/CH3OH/NH4OH 98/2/0.1). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 10.5g of intermediate (4) (43%).

Example A4 25

A mixture of ethyl 3-amino-4-[[(6-methyl-2-pyridyl)methyl]amino]benzoate (0.166 mol) and 4-isothiocyanato-1-(phenylmethyl)piperidine (0.166 mol) in ethanol (500ml) was stirred and refluxed for 8 hours and at room temperature overnight. The precipitate was filtered off and used without further purification. Yield: intermediate (5).

A mixture of intermediate (5) (0.16 mol), HgO (0.192 mol) and S (spat.tip) in DMF (100ml) was stirred at 80°C for 4 hours, filtered warm over dicalite, washed with warm DMF, heated again and filtered warm over dicalite. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in CH₂Cl₂. The mixture was washed with H₂O. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was co-evaporated with toluene. The residue was crystallized from CH₃CN. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 53.5g of intermediate (6) (70%)

Example A5

15

20

A mixture of N-(1-methylethyl)-2-propanamine (0.098 mol) in THF (100ml) was stirred at -40°C under N₂ flow. BuLi 1.6M in hexane (0.098 mol) was added dropwise. The mixture was stirred at -40°C for 30 min and cooled to -70°C. A mixture of 1-(diethoxymethyl)-2-methyl-1H-benzimidazole (0.098 mol) in THF (50ml) was added dropwise and the mixture was stirred for 45 minutes. A mixture of hexahydro-1-(phenylmethyl)-4H-azepin-4-one (0.049 mol) in THF (50ml) was added dropwise at -70°C. The mixture was hydrolized cold and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH 98/2). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated (yielding 7.5g). Part of the residue (3.5g) was crystallized from EtOAc. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 2.3g of intermediate (7).

A mixture of intermediate (7) (0.029 mol) in 1,1'-oxybis[2-methoxyethane] (300ml) and H₂SO₄ conc. (20ml) was stirred at 160°C for 24 hours. Ice water was added. The mixture was basified with K₂CO₃ solid and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer

was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 18g of a mixture of 2 compounds, of which one compound is intermediate (8) (75%).

A mixture of intermediate (8), 2-(chloromethyl)pyridine (0.047 mol) and K_2CO_3 (0.0775 mol) in acetonitrile (500ml) was stirred and refluxed for 24 hours. H_2O was added and the mixture was extracted with CH_2Cl_2 . The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 15.4g of a mixture of 2 compounds, of which one is intermediate (9).

Example A6

5

10

15

20

N,N-diethylethamine (16ml) and then 2-chloromethyl-6-methyl-3-pyridinol (0.0376 mol) were added to a mixture of ethyl 4-[(3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl)amino]-1-piperdinecarboxylate (0.0376 mol) in DMF (550ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours and at 50°C overnight. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was poured out into H₂O and CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by HPLC over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/C₂H₅OH 95/5 to 70/30). The desired fraction was collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 2.1 g of intermediate (10).

Example A7

A mixture of 1,4-dioxaspiro[4,5]decan-8-amine (0.28 mol) and 1-isothiocyanato-2-nitrobenzene (0.28 mol) in ethanol (300ml) was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The product was used without further purification. Yield: 90g of intermediate (11).

10

15

20

25

A mixture of intermediate (11) (0.178 mol) in NH₃/CH₃OH (500ml) and THF (100ml) was hydrogenated at room temperature under a 3 bar pressure for 24 hours with Pd/C (52g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H₂ (3 equiv), the catalyst was filtered through celite, washed with CH₃OH and the filtrate was evaporated. The product was used without further purification. Yield: 44g of intermediate (12).

A mixture of intermediate (12) (0.071 mol), HgO (0.142 mol) and S (0.56g) in ethanol (300ml) was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours, filtered over celite, washed with CH_2Cl_2 and the filtrate was evaporated. The reaction was carried out again using the same quantities. The residues were combined and then purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: $CH_2Cl_2/CH_3OH/NH_4OH$ 94/6/0.5; 20-45 μ m). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 14.5g of intermediate (13) (43%); mp. >260°C.

A mixture of intermediate (13) (0.049 mol), 2-(chloromethyl)pyridine (0.0735 mol) and K₂CO₃ (0.196 mol) in acetonitrile (325ml) was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours and then brought to room temperature. The reaction was carried out again using the same quantities. The mixtures were combined. H₂O was added and the mixture was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/ NH₄OH 98/2/0.1; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Part of this fraction (0.6g) was crystallized from diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.46g of intermediate (14); mp. 136°C.

A mixture of intermediate (14) (0.077 mol) in HCl 3N (350ml) was stirred and refluxed for 1 hour, poured out into ice water, basified with K₂CO₃ solid and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, washed with H₂O, dried (MgSO₄), filtered

and the solvent was evaporated. Part of the residue (1.5g) was crystallized from CH₃CN and diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.5g of intermediate (15); mp. 148°C.

Example A8

a) Preparation of (interm. 16)

5 LiAlH₄ (0.023 mol) was added portionwise at 5°C to a solution of (±)-ethyl α-ethyl-4-[[1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidineacetate (0.021 mol) in THF (100ml). The mixture was stirred at 5°C for 1 hour. EtOAc was added. The mixture was hydrolized with ice water, filtered over celite, washed with EtOAc, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 7.2g of intermediate (16) (88%).

Diethyl azodicarboxylate (0.028 mol) was added slowly at room temperature to a solution of intermediate (16) (0.019 mol), 1*H*-isoindole-1,3(2*H*)-dione (0.028 mol) and triphenyl phosphine (0.028 mol) in THF (200ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 8 hours. The solvent was evaporated till dryness. The residue was dissolved in CH₂Cl₂. The solution was acidified with HCl 3N, basified with NH₄OH and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (12g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/ CH₃OH/NH₄OH 97/3/0.1; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 5.5g of intermediate (17) (57%).

Example A9

15

20

A mixture of 8-[[1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1,4,8-dioxa-8-azaspiro[4.5]decane (0.0196 mol) in HCl 6N (55ml) and H₂O (55ml) was

WO 01/00611 PCT/EP00/05676

stirred and refluxed for 6 hours. Toluene was added. The mixture was poured out on ice, alkalized with a NaOH solution and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Part of this fraction was suspended in DIPE, filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.32g of intermediate (18) (91%).

-53-

A mixture of intermediate (18) (0.008 mol) and N,N-dibenzylethylenediamine (0.01 mol) in methanol (150ml) was hydrogenated with Pd/C 10% (1g) as a catalyst in the presence of thiophene solution (0.5ml). After uptake of H₂ (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. Yield: 5.39g of intermediate (19) (quant.).

Example A10

20

A mixture of (±)-N-(4-piperidinyl)-1-[1-(2-pyridyl)ethyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine (0.026 mol), 2-chloropropanenitrile (0.039 mol) and K₂CO₃ (0.052 mol) in acetonitrile (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for 8 hours. H₂O was added and the mixture was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (8.5g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH 96/4; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 4.5g of intermediate (20) (46%).

A mixture of compound 49 (0.0164 mol), 1-bromo-3-methyl-2-butanone (0.03 mol) and K₂CO₃ (0.06 mol) in CH₃CN (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for several hours. H₂O was added. The solvent was evaporated. 4-Methyl-2-pentanone was added. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 98/2). The desired fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 2.75g of intermediate (22) (40%).

-54-

Example A11

Preparation of

A mixture of compound 90 (0.015 mol), (chloromethyl)oxirane (0.008 mol) and Na₂CO₃ (1.59g) in 4-methyl-2-pentanone (150ml) was heated slowly to 100°C (to 40°C in 1 hour, 70°C in 1 hour), stirred at 100°C overnight, then stirred and refluxed for 20 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 95/5). Two fractions were collected and their solvents were evaporated. Fraction 1 was crystallized from DIPE. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.18g of intermediate (21).

Example A12

a) Preparation of

10 Methylsulfonyl chloride (0.0512 mol) was added dropwise at 0°C under N₂ flow to a mixture of 4-[[1-(2-pyridinylmethyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidineethanol (0.0256 mol) and *N*,*N*-diethylethanamine (0.0512 mol) in CH₂Cl₂ (200ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 90 minutes. The solvent was evaporated till dryness. Yielding: intermediate (23)

b) Preparation of

15

20

A mixture of intermediate (23) (0.028 mol), 2-[(phenylmethyl)amino]ethanol, (0.034 mol) and K₂CO₃ (0.112 mol) in CH₃CN (200ml) was stirred at 60°C for 4 hours. H₂O was added and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (13.5g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/NH₄OH 97/3/0.5; 35-70 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 5.5g of intermediate (24) (41%).

Preparation of

(interm. 25)

HCl 12N (165ml) was added to a mixture of

(interm. 36), prepared according to example A7c), (0.049 mol) in H₂O (165ml). The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 6 hours. The solvent was evaporated. HBr 48% (320ml) was added. The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours and then stirred overnight. The solvent was evaporated. 2-Propanol was added and the solvent was evaporated again. The residue was suspended in DIPE. The mixture was decanted, taken up in H₂O/DIPE and then separated into its layers. CH₂Cl₂ was added to the aqueous layer. The mixture was alkalized with NH₄OH. 2-Propanol was added. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 15g of intermediate (25).

Example A14

10

15

20

a) Preparation of (interm. 26)

3,4-diaminophenyl-(3-fluorophenyl)methanone (0.056 mol) and urea (0.084 mol) were stirred at 150 à 160°C for 4 hours (melt) and then cooled. Water was added. The mixture was stirred at 50°C for a while and then cooled. The precipitate was filtered off, stirred in 2-propanone and dried. Yield: 11.4g of intermediate (26).

b) Preparation of (interm. 27)

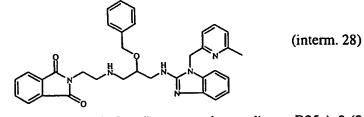
Phosphorus oxychloride (50ml) was added carefully to intermediate (26) (0.045 mol). The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 24 hours and then was stood at room temperature over the weekend. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in CH₂Cl₂/ice/K₂CO₃ solid. The mixture was separated into its layers. The aqueous layer was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The undissolved material was filtered off to give residue 1. The combined organic layer was dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated to give residue 2. Residue 1 and residue 2 were combined. Yield: 16.75g

i

of intermediate (27) (100%).

Example A15

Preparation of



A mixture of compound (341) (0.0025 mol), prepared according to B25a), 2-(2-bromoethyl)-1*H*-Isoindole-1,3(2*H*)-dione (0.00275 mol) and K₂CO₃ (3g) in CH₃CN (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for 24 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ and then washed with water. The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 97/3). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: intermediate (28).

Example A16

5

10

15

20

25

30

- a) 2, 4,5-trimethyloxazole (0.225mol) was stirred in CCl₄ (500mL) under N_2 -flow. Then 1-bromo-2,5-pyrrolidinedione (0.225mol) and benzoyl peroxide (cat.quant.) were added. This mixture was stirred and refluxed for 1hour under N_2 -flow. The reaction mixture was cooled in an ice bath (ice/salt). The mixture was filtered. The filtrate was evaporated. Yield: 42.7g (<100%) of 5-(bromomethyl)-2,4-dimethyloxazole (intermediate 30).
- b) Intermediate (30) (0.225 mol) was taken up in DMF (450ml). Na[N(CH(=O))₂] (0.225 mol) was added portionwise and the mixture was stirred at 50° C for 1hour and at room temperature overnight. The mixture was evaporated. Yield: 41g (100%) of N-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-N-formylformamide (intermediate 31).
- c) A mixture of intermediate (31) (0.225 mol) in HCl 36% (120ml) and ethanol (500ml) was refluxed for 1hour and stirred overnight. The mixture was filtered off, the precipitate was washed with C₂H₅OH and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was taken up in ice water, alkalized with NaOH and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The mixture was separated and the organic layer was dried and evaporated. Yield: 28g (100%) of 2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolmethanamine (intermediate 32).
- d) 2-chloro-3-nitropyridine (0.225 mol) and Na_2CO_3 (0.225 mol) were added to a mixture of intermediate (32) (0.225 mol) in ethanol (500ml) and the mixture was stirred and refluxed for 6hours. The mixture was evaporated and the residue was taken up in water and extracted with CH_2Cl_2 . The mixture was separated and the organic layer was

dried, filtered off and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel. The pure fractions were collected and evaporated. Yield: 27g (48%) of N-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3-nitro-2-pyridinamine (intermediate 33).

- e) A mixture of intermediate (33) (0.1 mol) was hydrogenated in a thiophene solution 4% (3ml) and methanol (400ml) with Pd/C 5% (4g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H_2 (3eq), the catalyst was filtered off. The residue was evaporated and used without further purification. Yield: 21.8 g (100%) of N^2 -[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-2,3-pyridinediamine (intermediate 34).
- f) Intermediate (34) (0.1 mol) was dissolved in DMF (250ml). Ethyl 4-isothiocyanato1-piperidinecarboxylate (0.1 mol) was added and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 20 hours. HgO (0.125 mol) and sulfur powder (few crystals) were added and the mixture was stirred at 75°C for 3hours 30minutes. The mixture was filtered over dicalite and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was taken up in water/CH₂Cl₂. The mixture was separated, the organic layer was dried, filtered off and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH 95/5). The pure fractions were collected and evaporated. The residue was crystallized from DIPE and recrystallized from CH₃CN. Yield: 216.6277g (55.4%) of ethyl 4-[[3-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]amino-1-piperidinecarboxylate (intermediate 35).

20 Example A17

25

30

Cl-CH₂-C(=NH)-O-C₂H₅ (0.0625 mol) was added to a mixture of N²-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-2,3-pyridinediamine (0.05 mol) in acetic acid (150mL) and the mixture was stirred for 20 hours at room temperature. The mixture was warmed up to 90°C and stirred for 10 minutes at this temperature. The mixture was evaporated at <50°C. The residue was taken up in water/CH₂Cl₂ + Na₂CO₃. The organic layer was separated, extracted with CH₂Cl₂, dried (MgSO₄) and filtered. The residue was taken up in DIPE + active charcoal and stirred for 1hour. The mixture was filtered and evaporated, Yield: 13.1 g (100%) of 2-(chloromethyl)-3-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine (intermediate 29). Preparation of the final compounds

Example B1

Í

-58-

A mixture of intermediate (2) (0.016 mol) in 2-propanol/HCl (10ml) and 2-propanol (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for 2 hours and then cooled. The precipitate was filtered off, washed with DIPE and dried. The residue was taken up in H₂O, NH₃ and CH₃OH and the mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/ (CH₃OH/NH₃) 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 1.8g of compound (1) (35%).

A mixture of intermediate (10) (0.0054 mol) in HBr 48% (50 ml) was stirred and refluxed for 5 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was suspended in DIPE, filtered off and crystallized from ethanol. The solvent was evaporated and the fraction was purified by high-performance liquid chromatography over RP Hyperprep (eluent: (0.5% NH₄OAc in H₂O)/CH₃CN from 100/0 to 0/100). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 0.188 g of compound (308).

Example B2

10

A mixture of intermediate (3) (0.00622 mol) in 2-propanol/HCl (10ml) and 2-propanol (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in H₂O, Na₂CO₃ and CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was dissolved in 2-propanol and DIPE and converted into the hydrochloric acid salt with 2-propanol/HCl. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. This fraction was converted into the free base and purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the hydrochloric acid salt (1:3). The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.65g of compound (2) (20%).

A mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl 4-[[1-[[3,5-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl-9-(phenylmethoxy)-1H-[1,3]dioxepino[5,6-c]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate (0.00552 mol) in HCl 10N (200ml) was stirred and refluxed for 6 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was suspended in DIPE, filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.58g of compound (3).

Example B3

5

10

15

A mixture of intermediate (4) (0.021 mol) and KOH (0.43 mol) in 2-propanol (100ml) was stirred and refluxed overnight. H₂O was added and the mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 6.9g of compound (4) (quant.).

Example B4

A mixture of intermediate (6) (0.02 mol) in ethanol (120ml) was hydrogenated with Pd/C 10% (2g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H₂ (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated, yielding a residue of 8g (100%). Part of this fraction (0.7g) was dissolved in ethanol and converted into the hydrochloric acid salt (1:3) with 2-propanol/HCl. DIPE was added. The mixture was stirred. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.65g of compound (5).

Example B5

į

Preparation of

(compound 6)

A mixture of intermediate (9) (0.035 mol) in methanol (200ml) was hydrogenated at room temperature under a 3 bar pressure for 48 hours with Pd/C (1.5g) as a catalyst, then hydrogenation was continued at 40°C under a 3 bar pressure for 48 hours. After uptake of H₂ (2 equiv), the catalyst was filtered through celite and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue (12g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/ NH₄OH 80/20/3). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 3.8g of compound (6) (34%).

Example B6

Preparation of

10

15

20

A mixture of 6-[[2-(4-piperidinylamino)-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-2-pyridine-carboxylic acid in HCl 36% (5ml) and ethanol (50ml) was stirred and refluxed overnight. The solvent was evaporated. H₂O, NaHCO₃ and CH₂Cl₂ were added. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 0.83g of compound (7).

Example B7

Preparation of

A mixture of compound (1) (0.003 mol), 1,1-dimethylethyl (2-bromoethyl) carbamoate (0.004 mol) and Na₂CO₃ (0.004 mol) in 2-butanone (100 ml) was stirred and refluxed overnight. The reaction mixture was cooled, washed with water and the layers were separated. The organic phase was washed with a NH₄Cl solution. The aqueous phase was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The combined organic layers were dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 97/3). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: a residue of 1.18 g of compound (8) (84%).

-61-

1

Example B8

Preparation of

Reaction under N₂ flow. NaH (0.01 mol) was added to a mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-(1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.01 mol) in DMF p.a. dry (100ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. 6-chloromethyl-2-(1,1-dimethylethyl)-4-pyrimidinol (0.01 mol) in a small amount of DMF p.a. dry was added dropwise. The mixture was stirred at 50°C overnight and then cooled. H₂O (50ml) was added. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in CH₂Cl₂. The organic solution was washed with H₂O/HOAc, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, to give residue 1. The aqueous layer was taken up in HOAc and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, to give residue 2. Residue 1 and 2 were combined and purified by column chromatography over RP 18 BDS (eluent: NH₄OAc (0.5% in H₂O)/ CH₃OH/CH₃CN 70/15/15, 0/50/50 and 0/0/100). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: compound (9).

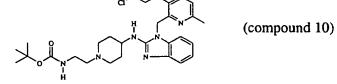
15 Example B9

10

20

25

a) Preparation of



Thionyl chloride (0.03 mol) was added to a mixture of (±)-6-methyl-3-[2-[(tetrahydro-2*H*-pyran-2-yl)oxy]ethoxy]-2-pyridinemethanol (0.015 mol) in CH₂Cl₂ (100ml). Toluene was added and evaporated again. The residue was taken up in DMF (50ml) and then added to a mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-(1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.015 mol) and NaH (0.06 mol) in DMF (200ml). The mixture was stirred at 50°C overnight. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in H₂O and CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/ (CH₃OH/NH₃) 99/1). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was suspended in petroleum ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 1.55g of compound (10) (20%).

(compound 11)

A mixture of compound (10) (0.00147 mol) and NH(CH₃)₂ gas (20g) in THF (100ml) was stirred at 125°C for 16 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 95/5). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 0.43g of compound (11) (53%).

Example B10

5

10

15

20

a) Preparation of (compound 12)

1-Bromo-2,5-pyrrolidinedione (0.088 mol) and then dibenzoyl peroxide (cat.quant.) were added to a solution of 3-chloro-6-methylpyridazine (0.08 mol) in CCl₄ (mol. sieves) (200ml). The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 6 hours and then filtered over dicalite. 1-Bromo-2,5-pyrrolidinedione (0.088 mol) and dibenzoyl peroxide (cat.quant.) were added again. The mixture was stirred and refluxed overnight and filtered over dicalite. The solvent was evaporated at a temperature below 40°C. The residue was dissolved in DMF (70ml) and added to a mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-(1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.0214 mol) and NaH (0.0235 mol) in DMF (190ml), previously stirred at room temperature for 1 hour and at 40°C for 1 hour. The resulting mixture was stirred at 50°C overnight. The solvent was evaporated. H₂O and CH₂Cl₂ were added. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 97/3). The pure fractions were collected and their solvents were evaporated. Yield: 1.21g of compound (12).

b) Preparation of (compound 13) A mixture of compound (12) (0.0025 mol), CaO (2g) and Pd/C (1g) in 1-butanethiol (2ml) and THF (100ml) was stirred at room temperature for the weekend. The solvent was evaporated. Yield: 1g of compound (13) (88%).

Example B11

Preparation of

A mixture of intermediate (15) (0.031 mol) and N-(2-aminoethyl)acetamide (0.093 mol) in methanol (300ml) was hydrogenated at 30°C under a 3 bar pressure for 12 hours with Pd/C (5g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H₂ (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered through celite, washed with CH₃OH and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/ CH₃OH/NH₄OH 92/8/0.5; 20-45 μm). Two pure fractions were collected and their solvents were evaporated, yielding a residue of 2.8g (22%) and 9g (71%). Parts of these fractions (0.6g; 0.8g) were crystallized from diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.52g of compound (14); mp. 126°C and 0.53g of compound (15); mp. 200°C.

Example B12

Preparation of

NaBH₃CN (0.048 mol) was added portionwise at 5°C to a solution of N-4-piperidinyl-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine dihydrochloride (0.032 mol) and 1,1-dimethylethyl (1,1-dimethyl-2-oxoethyl)carbamoate (0.032 mol) in methanol (100ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 8 hours and hydrolized at 5°C with ice water. Methanol was evaporated. The residue was extracted with CH₂Cl₂.
 The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (13g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/ NH₄OH 95/5/0.1; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 2.2g of compound (16) (14%).

Example B13

-64-

Preparation of

A mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-[[1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridyl)methyl]-6-nitro-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.0084 mol) in methanol (150ml) was hydrogenated at 50°C with Pt/C 5% (1g) as a catalyst in the presence of thiophene solution (1ml). After uptake of H₂ (3 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 99/1 to 97.5/2.5). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 3.3g of compound (17) (82%).

Example B14

Preparation of

10

15

20

A mixture of N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-pyridyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine (0.143 mol) in HCOOH (50ml) was stirred and refluxed for 3 hours. The solvent was evaporated till dryness. The residue was dissolved in CH₂Cl₂. The mixture was basified with Na₂CO₃, filtered and the filtrate was evaporated till dryness. The residue (4.9g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/NH₄OH 92/8/1; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from 2-propanone. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 2.8g of compound (18) (51%); mp. 146°C.

Example B15

Preparation of

LiAlH₄ (0.0065 mol) was added portionwise at 5°C to a solution of (±)-1,1-dimethyl-ethyl [1-(methoxycarbonyl)-2-[4-[[1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.0059 mol) in THF (30ml). The mixture was stirred at 5°C for 1 hour. EtOAc was added. The mixture was hydrolized with ice water, filtered over celite and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (2.8g) was purified by column

chromatography over silica gel (eluent: $CH_2Cl_2/CH_3OH/NH_4OH$ 92/8/0.5; 15-40 µm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 1.55g of compound (19) (56%).

Example B16

a) Preparation of

(compound 290)

A mixture of

(0.021mol) in 2-propanol/HCl

- (29 ml) and 2-propanol (290 ml) was stirred and refluxed for 2 hours and then cooled to room temperature. The precipitate was filtered off and combined with analogously obtained fraction. The precipitate was dissolved at reflux in ethanol (150 ml), then allowed to crystallize out. The precipitate was filtered off and dried (45 °C, 16 hours, then air-dried for 30 minutes). Yield: 8.9 g (70%) of compound (290). Compound (290) was converted into the free base according to art known procedures resulting in compound (355).
 - b) Preparation of

preparation of

15

Hydroxybutanedioate (1:1) Hydrate (1:2)

Compound (355) (0.001 mol) was added to ethanol (6 ml; absolute ethanol) and heated to reflux temperature to give an homogeneous solution (I). Solution (I) was treated with butanedioic acid (0.118 g, 0.001 mol) and resulted in immediate salt formation. The mixture was heated to reflux temperature, became homogeneous, then was allowed to

10

15

20

30

cool to room temperature. The precipitate was filtered off, and dried (vacuum, 50 °C, 24 hours). Yield: 0.40 g (78%) of compound (356). Solution (I) was treated with hydroxybutanedioic acid (0.134 g, 0.001 mol) and the mixture was heated to reflux temperature, became homogeneous, then was allowed to cool to room temperature. The precipitate was filtered off and dried (vacuum, 50 °C, 24 hours). Yield: 0.46 g (87%) of compound (357).

Compound (290) (0.000065 mol) was dissolved in water (3 ml). The mixture was stirred and alkalized with concentrated NH₄OH (400 µl, and 100 µl). CHCl₃ (20 ml) was added. The mixture was stirred vigorously for 10 minutes. More conc. NH₄OH (100 µl) was added and the mixture was stirred vigorously for 5 minutes. The organic layer was separated, then the alkalic layer was re-extracted once with CHCl₃ (5 ml). The combined organic layers were washed once with a saturated aqueous NaCl solution, then dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was stirred in HCOOH (20 ml) until complete dissolution (= after 2 minutes). Acetic acid anhydride (0.00213 mol) was added dropwise over 1 minute and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature. After 24 hours, more acetic acid anhydride (50 µl) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 15 minutes. More acetic acid anhydride (50 µl) was added to the reaction mixture. The whole was stirred for 2 hours 15 minutes on a 60 °C oil-bath, then stood over the weekend at room temperature. More acetic acid anhydride (1000 µl) was added to the reaction mixture. The whole was stirred for 30 minutes on a 60-70 °C oil-bath, then stirred overnight at room temperature. Again, the reaction mixture was stirred for 2.5 hours at 60 °C. More acetic acid anhydride (100 µl) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 45 minutes at 60 °C, then stood overnight at room temperature. Water (100 µl) was added to decompose remaining acetic acid anhydride. The solvent was evaporated (in vacuo at 60 °C). Toluene was added to the residue, then evaporated again (in vacuo, 60 °C). Xylene was added, then evaporated (in vacuo at 60 °C) to give (x). To a sample, water (3 drops) was added. NH₄OH (10 µl) was added. Water (5 drops) was added and the mixture was shaken vigorously to give (y). (x) and (y) were dissolved in CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 84/12/4, then purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 84/12/4). The product fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. This fraction (0.185 g) was stirred in boiling

ethanol (± 10 ml), allowed to cool to room temperature, then Et₂O (10 ml) was added and the mixture was stirred for 15 minutes. The precipitate was filtered off by suction, rinsed with Et₂O, then air-dried for 3 hours, then dried further (high vacuum, 2 hours at room temperature, then air-dried overnight at room temperature). Yield: 0.153 g of compound (354).

Example B17

Preparation of

H₂O (1:1)

A mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-[[1-(1,5-dimethyl-1*H*-pyrrol-2-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.002 mol) and KOH (1g) in sec. butanol (25ml) was stirred and refluxed for 1 hour. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/ (CH₃OH/NH₃) 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was suspended in DIPE. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.57g of compound (21).

Example B18

Preparation of

HCl (1:4); H₂O (1:2)

A mixture of 2-[2-[4-[[1-[3-(2-pyridyl)propyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-1*H*-isoindole-1,3(2*H*)-dione (0.005 mol) in HCl 6N (120ml) and HOAc (60ml) was stirred and refluxed for 30 hours and then cooled on an ice bath. A NaOH solution was added carefully dropwise until pH > 7. The mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂ and then separated into its layers. The aqueous layer was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The combined organic layer was washed with H₂O, separated again, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in a small amount of 2-propanol and converted into the hydrochloric acid salt (1:4) with 2-propanol/HCl 6N. DIPE was added. The precipitate was filtered off, washed with DIPE and dried. Yield: 1.95g of compound (22) (70%).

25 Example B19

-68-

Preparation of

A mixture of intermediate (17) (0.01 mol) in hydrazine (5ml) and ethanol (50ml) was stirred and refluxed for 30 minutes. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was dissolved in CH₂Cl₂. The organic solution was washed with H₂O, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (4.8g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/NH₄OH 89/10/1; 15-40 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 51.7g of compound (23) (45%); mp. 112°C.

Example B20

Preparation of

10

15

A mixture of 3-methyl-1-[4-[[1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1piperidinyl]-2-butanone (0.01 mol) and benzenemethanamine (0.031 mol) in methanol (50ml) was hydrogenated at 40°C under a 3 bar pressure for 24 hours with Pd/C (0.4g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H₂ (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered through celite, washed with CH₃OH and CH₂Cl₂ and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue (5g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/NH₄OH 93/7/1; 15-40 µm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from pentane. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 1g of compound (24) (21%); mp. 115°C.

Example B21

Preparation of

20 Reaction under N₂ atmosphere. Na₂CO₃ (0.250 g) was added to 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-(1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.0028 mol) in DMF (10 ml). The mixture was stirred for 4 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was divided over 5 tubes. 2-Chloromethyl-3-chloro-5-trifluoropyridine

ŧ

(0.100 g) was added to each tube and the resulting reaction mixture was stirred overnight at 50 °C. The mixture was acidified with HCl/2-propanol, then stirred for 3 hours at 90°C. The mixture was alkalized with NH₃/CH₃OH and the desired compound was isolated and purified by high-performance liquid chromatography over a Prochrom D.A.C.-column with Hypersil 'BDS' HS C18 (100 g, 8 μm, 100 Å; eluent gradient: ((0.5% NH₄OAc in H₂O)/CH₃OH/CH₃CN (0 min) 70/15/15, (10.31 min) 0/50/50, (16.32 min) 0/0/100, (16.33 min-end) 70/15/15). The desired fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 0.020 g of compound (25).

Example B22

20

a) Preparation of

A mixture of 1-[4-[[1-[(3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]-amino]-1-piperidinyl]-3-methyl-2-butanone (0.0065 mol) in CH₃OH/NH₃ (300ml) was hydrogenated at room temperature with Rh/Al₂O₃ (1g) as a catalyst in the presence of CH₃OH/NH₃ (3ml). After uptake of H₂ (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 95/5 to 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 1.52g of compound (26) (55%).

(prepared analogous to the procedure described in example A10b)) in NH₃/CH₃OH (100 ml) was hydrogenated for 16 hours at 50°C with Rh/C (0.5 g) as a catalyst in the presence of thiophene solution (1 ml). After uptake of H₂ (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by high-performance liquid chromatography over Kromasil C18 (100 Å; eluent: NH₄OAc 0.5%

H₂O/CH₃CN 75%, 25% CH₃OH to CH₃CN 100%). Two pure fraction groups were collected and their solvent was evaporated. Yield: 0.165 g of compound 298.

Example B23

Preparation of

5

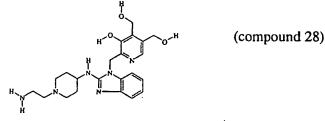
10

HCl (1:3); H₂O (1:1)

A mixture of (±)-1,1,dimethylethyl [2-[4-[[1-[[6-methyl-3-[2-[(tetrahydro-2*H*-pyran-2-yl)oxy]ethoxy]-2-pyridyl]methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-carbamate (0.0014 mol) in 2-propanol/HCl (5ml) and 2-propanol (50ml) was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours and taken up in H₂O, Na₂CO₃ and CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated. 2-Propanol/HCl (5ml) and 2-propanol (50ml) were added again. The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 1 hour and converted into the hydrochloric acid salt. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/ (CH₃OH/NH₃) 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the hydrochloric acid salt. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.18g of compound (27) (23%).

15 Example B24

Preparation of



HCl (1:1)

A mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-[[1-[[3,5-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl-9-(phenyl-methoxy)-1*H*-[1,3]dioxepino[5,6-c]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.00213 mol) in HCl 10N (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was suspended in DIPE. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.9g of compound (28).

Example B25

20

-71-

5

15

A mixture of intermediate (19) (0.008 mol) in methanol (150ml) was hydrogenated with Pd/C (1g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H₂ (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/ (CH₃OH/NH₃) 95/5, 93/7 to 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 1.81g of compound (29) (60%).

A mixture of intermediate (24) (0.011 mol) in methanol (100ml) was hydrogenated at room temperature under a 3 bar pressure overnight with Pd/C (2g) as a catalyst. The catalyst was recuperated and hydrogenation was continued at room temperature under a 3 bar pressure for 2 hours with Pd/C (2g) as a catalyst. After uptake of hydrogen (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off, washed with CH3OH and CH2Cl2 and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue (4.5g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: $CH_2Cl_2/CH_3OH/NH_4OH$ 85/15/1 and 56/40/4; 15-40 μ m). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from 2-propanol and diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 1.8g of compound (312) (40%).

according to A5c), in methanol (250 ml) was hydrogenated with Pd/C 10% (2 g) as a catalyst. After uptake of hydrogen (3 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel

-72-

(eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 90/10). The product fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 4.2 g of compound (313).

Example B26

Preparation of

5

10

20

LiAlH₄ (0.014 mol) was added portionwise at 5°C to a solution of intermediate (20) (0.012 mol) in THF (50ml). The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and then stirred at room temperature for 48 hours. EtOAc was added. The mixture was hydrolized with ice water, filtered over celite, washed with EtOAc and the filtrate was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (3g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/ NH₄OH 87/13/1; 15-40 µm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from DIPE. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.75g of compound (30) (16%); mp. 85°C.

15 Example B27

a) Preparation of

A mixture of 4-[[1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinebutanenitrile (0.01 mol) in CH₃OH/NH₃ (80ml) was hydrogenated at room temperature under a 3 bar pressure overnight with Raney Nickel (3.8g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H₂ (2 equiv), the catalyst was filtered through celite and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 2.9g of compound (31) (76%); mp. 94°C.

A mixture of 5-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-3H-imidazo[4.5-b]pyridin-3-yl]methyl]-2-furanmethanol (0.0068 mol) in CH₃OH/NH₃ (300 ml) was hydrogenated at 20 °C with Raney Nickel (1 g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H₂ (2 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) from 95/5 to 90/10). The desired fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated.

The residue was repurified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: $CH_2Cl_2/(CH_3OH/NH_3)$ 95/5). The purest fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up into HCl/2-propanol and DIPE was added. The resulting salt was filtered off and purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: $CH_2Cl_2/(CH_3OH/NH_3)$ 98/2). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 0.2 g of compound (314).

Example B28

10

15

20

Preparation of

OH

N

(compound 303)

A mixture of intermediate 21 (0.001 mol) in CH₃OH/NH₃ (100ml) was stirred at room temperature for 20 hours and at 100°C for 16 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was dried. Yield: 0.11g of compound 303.

Example B29

Preparation of (compound 315)

Iodomethane (0.00494 mol) was added at room temperature to a solution of compound (328) (0.004491 mol) in 2-propanone (17ml), and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. The residue (1.6g) was crystallized from 2-propanone. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 1.5g of compound (315) (64%).

Example B30

Preparation of H₂N (compound 316)

Hydrochloride (1:3) Hydrate (1:1)

Compound (317) (0.0027 mol) was dissolved in ethanol (50ml). The mixture was converted into the hydrochloric acid salt (1:3) with 2-propanol/HCl. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 1.68g of compound (316).

Tables 1 to 17 list the compounds of formula (I') and the compounds of group (I'') which were prepared according to one of the above examples.

10 <u>Table 1</u>

5

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	Rª	R ^b	Physical data	
32	Bla	1	Н	1,4-dimethyl-1 <i>H</i> -imidazol-5-yl	H ₂ O (1:2)	
33	Bla	1	Н	1,4-dimethyl-5-[-COOC ₂ H ₅]- 1 <i>H</i> -imidazol-2-yl	HCl (1:3)	
34	Bla	1	Н	2-bromo-5-pyridyl		
35	Bla	1	CH ₃	2-pyrazinyl		
36	Bla	1	ethyl	2-pyrazinyl		
37	Bla	1	Н	2-pyridyl	HCl (1:2); mp. >160°C	
38	Bla	1	CH ₃	2-pyridyl		
39	Bla	2	н	2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)	
40	Віь	2	Н	2-pyridyl		
41	Віь	3	н	2-pyridyl	HBr (1:3)	
42	Bla	0	-	2-pyrimidinyl		
43	Bla	1	Н	2-pyrimidinyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)	
44	Bla	1	Н	3,5,6-trimethyl-2-pyrazinyl	•	
45	Bla	1	н	3-[C ₂ H ₅ -O-(CH ₂) ₂ -O]- 6-methyl-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H₂O (1:3)	
46	Bla	1	Н	3-amino-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)	

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	Rª	R ^b	Physical data
47	Bla	1	Н	3-amino-2-pyridyl	
48	Bla	1	Н	3-hydroxy-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
49	Bla	1	Н	3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:3)
50	Bla	1	Н	3-hydroxy-6-pyridazinyl	HCl (1:2); H ₂ O (1:1)
51	Bla	1	Н	3-methoxy-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)
52	Bla	1	Н	3-methoxy-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	
53	Bla	I	Н	3-methyl-2-pyrazinyl	
3	B2b	1	H	3-OH-4,5-(-CH ₂ -OH) ₂ -2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)
54	Bla	1	Н	3-pyridazinyl	
55	В3	1	Н	1,5-(CH ₃) ₂ -1 <i>H</i> -pyrrol-2-yl	
56	Bla	1	H	4,6-dimethyl-2-pyridyl	
57	Bla	1	H	4-chloro-2-pyridyl	
58	Bla	1	Н	4-methoxy-2-pyridyl	•
59	Bla	I	Н	4-methyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
60	Bla	1	Н	4-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
61	Bla	1	Н	4-pyridyl	
62	Bla	1	H	4-pyrimidinyl	
63	Bla	1	H	5-chloro-1-methyl-1 <i>H</i> - imidazol-2-yl	
64	Bla	1	Н	5-methyl-2-pyrazinyl	HCl (1:1)
65	Bla	1	Н	5-methyl-2-pyrazinyl	
66	Bla	1	н	6-(-CH ₂ -O-CH ₃)- 2-pyridyl	HCl (1:2); H ₂ O (1:3)
67	Bla	1	Н	6-(hydroxymethyl)-2-pyridyl	
68	Bla	1	H	6-[-CO-N(CH ₃) ₂]-2-pyridyl	
69	Bla	1	H .	6-bromo-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:2)
70	Bla	1	Н	6-bromo-2-pyridyl	
71	Bla	1	н	6-chloro-2- pyridyl	HCl (1:2)
72	Bla	1	Н	6-HOOC-2-pyridyl	
73	Bla	1	CH ₃	6-hydroxymethyl-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
74	Bla	1	н	6-methoxy-2-pyridyl	
1	Bla	1	Н	6-methyl-2-pyrazinyl	
75	Bla	1	CH ₃	6-methyl-2-pyrazinyl	
2	B2a	1	н	6-methyl-3-{-O-(CH ₂) ₂ -OH]- 2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H₂O (1:2)
76	Bla	1	Н	6-methyl-3-[-O-(CH ₂) ₂ - N(CH ₃) ₂]-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:4); H₂O (1:1)

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	Rª	R ^b	Physical data
7	В6	1	Н	6-(-COOC ₂ H ₅)-2-pyridyl	

Table 2

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	а	Rª	R ^b	R°	Physical data
78	Bla	1	СН	Н	Н	CH ₃	-
4	В3	2	CH	Н	Н	Н	•
81	B16	1	СН	Н	н	-CH₂-phenyl	-
308	Blb	1	N	3-OH	6-CH₃	н	-

5 Table 3

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
& & & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& &$$

Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	Rª	R ^b	R ^c	Physical data
82	B4	CH ₂	5-OCH ₃	6-OCH ₃	Н	
83	Blb	NH	5-Cl	6-Cl	CH ₃	HBr (1:3)
84	В1ь	NH	5-CH₃	6-CH₃	CH ₃	HBr (1:3)
85	Blb	NH	4-Cl	Н	CH ₃	HBr (1:3)
86	Blb	NH	7-Cl	н	CH₃	HBr (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
87	Blb	NH	6-NO ₂	Н	CH ₃	HBr (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
88	Blb	NH	7-CH ₃	Н	CH ₃	HBr (1:3)
89	Blb	NH	5-NO ₂	н	CH ₃	HBr (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
90	Віь	NH	7-CH ₃	Н	CH₃	
91	Blb	NH	4-CH ₃	н	CH₃	HBr (1:3)
92	Blb	NH	4-CH ₃	Н	CH ₃	

Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	Rª	R ^b	R°	Physical data
93	Bib	NH	5-CF ₃	Н	CH₃	
94	Blb	NH	6-CF ₃	н	CH ₃	
95	Blb	NH	6-Cl	н	CH ₃	
96	Blb	NH	NH 5-CI		CH ₃	
5	B4	NH	6-(-COOC ₂ H ₅)	н	CH ₃	
97	B4	NH	6-(-COOC ₂ H ₅)	Н	CH ₃	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
98	B4	NH	6-(-CH ₂ -OH)	Н	CH ₃	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)
99	В4	NH	6-(-CH ₂ -OH)	Н	CH ₃	
100	Bla	CH[N(CH ₃) ₂]	Н	н	CH ₃	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)

Table 4

Co. No.	Ex. No.	*	L	Physical data		
101	B4	4	3-piperidinyl	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)		
102	B4	3	н .			
18	B14	4	-(CH ₂) ₂ -NH-CHO	mp. 146°C		
103	B 7	4	$\begin{array}{c c} & CH_3 & O \\ H_3C & -CH_3 & CH_2 - CH_2 - CH_2 - CH_3 & CH_2 - $			
104	B16	4	H ₂ N—CH ₂ —	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2); mp. 226°C		
105	B16	4	-CH ₂ -C(CH ₃) ₂ -NH ₂	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2); mp. 195°C		
106	B16	4	-CH₂-CH(CH₂OH)- NH₂	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2); mp. 200°C		
23	B19	4	-CH(C₂H₅)-CH₂-NH₂	mp. 112°C		
107	B19	4	-CH(C ₆ H ₅)-CH(C ₆ H ₅)-NH ₂	(A); mp. 106°C		
108	B19	4	-CH(C ₆ H ₅)-CH(C ₆ H ₅)-NH ₂	(B); mp. 98°C		
109	B19	4	2-aminocyclohexyl	mp. 116°C		
110	B19	4	-CH(phenylmethyl)-CH ₂ -NH ₂	mp. 168°C		
111	B19	4	-CH[C(CH ₃) ₃]-CH ₂ -NH ₂	mp. 133°C		
112	B19	4	-CH[CH ₂ -N(CH ₃) ₂]-CH ₂ -NH ₂	mp. 112°C		
113	B19	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-phenyl	mp. 128°C		

Co. No.	Ex. No.	*	L	Physical data		
114	B19	4	-CH[CH ₂ -(1-piperidinyl)]-CH ₂ -NH ₂	HCl (1:4); mp. 203°C		
115	B19	4	-CH ₂ -CH(cyclopropyl)-NH ₂	H ₂ O (1:2); mp. 84°C		
24	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH[CH(CH ₃) ₂]-NH ₂	mp. 115°C		
116	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(CH ₃)-NH ₂	H ₂ O (1:1)		
117	B20	4	-CH(CH3)-CH(CH3)-NH2	(B); mp. 114°C		
118	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(C ₂ H ₅)-NH ₂	mp. 140°C		
119	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(cycloC ₆ H ₁₁)-NH ₂	mp. 134°C		
120	B20	4	-CH(CH₃)-CH(CH₃)-NH₂	(A); HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:4); mp. 214°C		
121	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-CH ₂ -CH(CH ₃) ₂	mp. 124°C		
122	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-(CH ₂) ₃ -CH ₃	mp. 142°C		
123	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-(CH ₂) ₂ -CH(CH ₃) ₂	mp. 152°C		
124	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-(CH ₂) ₂ -CH ₃	mp. 146°C		
125	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-(CH ₂) ₇ -CH ₃	mp. 136°C		
126	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-(CH ₂) ₂ -phenyl	mp. 136°C		
127	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-CH ₂ -C(CH ₃) ₃	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1); mp. 244°C		
128	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-CH(CH ₃)(C ₂ H ₅)	(A); H ₂ O (1:1); mp. 80°C		
129	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-CH(CH ₃)(C ₂ H ₅)	(B); mp. 90°C		
130	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-(CH ₂) ₂ - (4-methoxyphenyl)	mp. 100°C		
131	Bla	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-(4-piperidinyl)	HCl (1:5); H ₂ O (1:1); mp. 269°C		
31	B27a	4	-(CH ₂) ₄ -NH ₂	mp. 94°C		
132	B27a	4	-CH(CH ₃)-CH ₂ -NH ₂	mp. 142°C		
133	B27a	3	-(CH ₂) ₂ -NH ₂	H ₂ O (1:1); mp. 90°C		
134	B16	4	-(CH ₂) ₃ -NH ₂	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1); mp. >250°C		
328	B7	4	-(CH ₂) ₂ -N(CH ₃) ₂	-		
327	B7	4	-(CH ₂) ₂ -N(CH ₃) ₂	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:3); mp. 180°C		

^{* =} position piperidinyl

⁽A) indicates the first isolated stereoisomeric form

⁽B) indicates the second isolated stereoisomeric form

Table 5

$$(CH_2)_0$$
 $(CH_2)_0$ $(CH_2)_0$

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	а	Rª	R ^b	R°	Physical data
135	Bla	1	СН	6-[-COOCH(CH ₃) ₂]	Н	н.	
136	Bla	1	СН	6-[-COOC₂H₅]	Н	Н	
137	B16	1	СН	6-СН₂ОН	Н	н	
138	B16	1	СН	6-CH ₃	5-CI	6-CI	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)
139	B16	1	N	3-CH ₃	Н	Н	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
20	B16	1	N	6-CH ₃	Н	н	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)
140	B16	1	N	5-CH ₃	Н	н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
141	B16	2	CH	н	н	н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)
142	B16	1	СН	6-CH₃	5-CH ₃	6-CH ₃	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2); 2-propanolate (1:1)
143	B16	1	СН	6-CH ₃	4-Cl	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
144	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	7-Cl	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
145	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	6-NO ₂	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:3)
146	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	6-NH ₂	Н	HCl (1:5); H ₂ O (1:2)
147	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	5-NO ₂	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)
148	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	5-NH ₂	Н	HCl (1:5); H ₂ O (1:1)
149	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	7-CH₃	H	
151	B16	1	CH	6-Cl	Н.	Н	
153	B16	1	CH	6-Br	Н	Н	
154	B16	1	CH	6-OH	Н	Н	
155	B16	1	CH	6-OCH₃	Н	H ,	
156	B16	1	CH	4-Cl	н	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)
157	B16	1	CH	4-OCH ₃	Н	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2); 2-propanolate (1:1)
158	B16	1	CH	6-CH₂OCH₃	Н	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
159	B16	1	N	5-COOC₂H₅	Н	Н	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
160	B16	1	СН	6-CH ₃	4-CH ₃	н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
161	B16	1	СН	6-CH ₃	6-COOC₂H₅	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	a	Rª	R ^b	R ^c	Physical data	
162	B16	1	СН	6-CH ₃	6-СН₂ОН	Н	H ₂ O (1:1)	
163	B16	1	СН	6-CH ₃	5-CF ₃	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)	
164	B16	1	СН	6-CH ₃	6-CF ₃	н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)	
165	B16	1	СН	6-CON(CH ₃) ₂	Н	Н	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)	
166	B16	1	СН	6-CH ₃	5-Cl	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)	
22	B18	3	СН	Н	Н	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)	
167	B27a	1	СН	6-CH ₃	Н	Н		
305	B16	1	СН	6-CH₃	5-CH ₃	н		
306	B16	1	СН	6-CH ₃	6-Cl	Н	HCl (1:4)	

Table 6

$$R^{d} \xrightarrow{3} \stackrel{R^{a}}{\underset{1}{|N|}} R^{l}$$

$$H_{2}N - CH - CH_{2} - N$$

$$NH - NH - NH$$

Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	R ^a	R ^b	R°	R ^d	R ^{'e}	Physical data
168	B27a	СН	3-OH	н	н	Н	Н	-
169	Bla		3-[-O-(CH ₂) ₂ - N(CH ₃) ₂]	6-CH₃	Н	Н	Н	HCl (1:5); H ₂ O (1:2)
152	B16	СН	Н	н	Н	CH ₃	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:3)
170	B20	СН	3-NH ₂	н	Н	Н	CH(CH ₃) ₂	HCl (1:4); H₂O (1:3)
171	B20	N	5-CH ₃	Н	Н	Н	CH ₃	mp. 175°C
172	B20	N	6-CH ₃	H	Н	Н	CH ₃	mp. 126°C
173	B20	N	3-CH ₃	5-CH ₃	6-CH₃	Н	CH₃	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:3); mp. 208°C
174	B20	N	3-CH ₃	5-CH ₃	6-CH₃	Н	CH(CH₃)₂	mp. 124°C
175	B16	N	Н	н	н	CH ₃	н	HCl (1:3)
176	B16	N	3-CH ₃	5-CH ₃	6-СН₃	Н	н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1); 2-propanolate (1:1)
177	B16	N	н	Н	Н	ethyl	н	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
178	B16	N	6-CH₃	Н	Н	CH ₃	Н	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
179	B16	СН	4-CH ₃	6-CH ₃	н	Н	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
180	B16	СН	6-Cl	Н	н	CH ₃	Н	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
181	B16	CH	3-OH	6-CH₃	Н	Н	Н	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)

Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	Rª	R ^b	R°	R ^d	Re	Physical data
182	B16	СН	3-OCH ₃ .	6-CH ₃	Н	Н	Н	
183	B16	СН	6-СН₂ОН	н	Н	CH ₃	Н	HCl (1:4); H₂O (1:1)
184	B16	СН	3-[O-(CH ₂) ₂ - OC ₂ H ₅	6-CH ₃	н	Н	н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
185	B16	СН	3-OCH₂CH₂CI	6-CH ₃	н	Н	н	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)
186	B20	СН	Н	Н	Н	CH ₃	CH ₃	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:3); mp. 170°C
187	B20	N	6-CH ₃	Н	Н	Н	CH(CH ₃) ₂	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O(1:3); mp. 200°C
188	B20	СН	Н	Н	н	CH₃	CH(CH ₃) ₂	mp. 233°C
189	B20	N	5-CH ₃	н	н	Н	CH(CH ₃) ₂	mp. 114°C
190	B20	СН	Н	Н	Н	Н	CH(CH ₃) ₂	mp. 50°C
25	B21	СН	3-Cl	5-CF ₃	Н	Н	н	
26	B22a	СН	3-OH	6-CH ₃	Н	H	CH(CH ₃) ₂	•
27	B23	СН	3-O-(CH ₂) ₂ -OH	6-CH ₃	Н	Н	н	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O(1:1)
28	B24	СН	4-CH₂OH	3-OH	5-CH ₂ C	рн н	н	HCl (1:1)
192	B27a	СН	6-CH ₃	Н	Н	CH ₃	Н	
299	B16	СН	3-CN	Н	H·	Н	н	mp. 142°C
300	B20	СН	4-OCH ₃	3-OCH ₃	Н	Н	CH(CH ₃) ₂	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O(1:2); mp. 210°C
301	B16	СН	3-NH-SO₂-pheny	6-Cl	н	Н	н	mp. 161°C
307	B20	СН	5-OCH ₃	6-OCH ₃	Н	Н	CH(CH ₃) ₂	C ₂ H ₂ O ₄ (2:7); mp. 90°C

Table 7

$$R^{d}$$
 $H_{2}N$ — CH - CH_{2} - N
 R^{d}
 R

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	*	а	Rª	R ^b	R°	R ^d	Physical data
193	B16	2	2	CH ₂	Н	Н	Н	Н	ethanedioate (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2); mp. 125°C
194	В22ь	1	2	NH	Cl	Н	6-CH ₃	CH(CH ₃) ₂	
195	В22ь	1	2	NH	Н	7-CH ₃	6-CH ₃	CH(CH ₃) ₂	
196	B16	2	2	NH	Н	Н	Н	H	ethanedioate (2:7);
	ll								H ₂ O (1:2); mp. 170°C

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	*	a	Rª	R ^b	R ^c	R ^d	Physical data
197	B16	1	2	N(CH3)	Н	Н	Н	Н	
198	B16	1	2	N(CH ₂ -phenyl)	H	Н	Н	H	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
199	B27a	0	2	NH	H	H	Н	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
200	Bla	1	2	CH₂	ОСН₃	6-OCH₃	H	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1); 2-propanolate (1:1)
201	Bla	1	3	NH	H	н	6-Br	Н	HBr (1:4); H ₂ O (1:4)
202	B16	1	4	NH	Н	н	Н	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:3)
296	B22b	1	2	NH	CH ₃	Н	6-CH ₃	CH(CH ₃) ₂	-

^{* =} position pyridyl

Table 8

$$R-NH-CH_2-CH_2-N$$

Co. No.		L	a	R	Physical data
203	B16	4-pyrimidinyl	NH	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
204	B16	2-pyrimidinyl	NH	н .	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
205	B16	2-pyrimidinyl	NH	Н	
206	B16	3-pyridazinyl	NH	Н	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
207	B16	4,6-dimethoxy- 2-pyrimidinyl	NH	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:3)
208	B16	2-pyrimidinyl	NH	н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)
209	B16	6-methyl-2-pyridyl	CH[N(CH ₃) ₂]	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2); 2-propanolate (1:1)
210	B7	6-methyl-2-pyridyl	CH[N(CH ₃) ₂]	-COOC(CH ₃) ₃	
211	B25a	2-pyridiyl	NH	CH ₃	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2); mp. 224°C
212	B27a	2-[C(CH ₃) ₃]-6-OH- 4-pyrimidinyl	NH	Н	
320	B30	2-pyridinyl	NH	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)
319	B27a	2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl	NH	н	
329	B16	2,5-dimethyl-4-oxazolyl	NH	Н	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
333	B16	5-methyl-3-isoxazolyl	NH	н	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
317	B27a	2-methyl-5-oxazolyl	NH	Н	mp. 115°C; H ₂ O (1:1)
323	B27a	4-thiazolyl	NH	Н	
326	B16	5-phenyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol- 3-yl	NH	Н	HCl (1:3)

Co. No.		L	a	R	Physical data
332	B16	2-(hydroxymethyl)-5- oxazolyl	NH	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
331	B16	3-methyl-5-isoxazolyl	NH	Н	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
324	B16	2-(dimethylamino)-4-	CH₂	н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1);
		thiazolyl			propanolate (1:1)
325	B27a	2-methyl-4-thiazolyl	CH₂	н	
318	B27a	2-methyl-3-furanyl	NH	н	mp. 142°C
312	В25ь	2-pyridinyl	NH	СН₂-СН₂ОН	mp. 151°C
316	B30	2-methyl-5-oxazolyl	NH	н	HCl (1:4);H ₂ O(1:1)

Table 9

$$H_2N-CH_2-CH_2-N$$
 $H_2N-CH_3-CH_2-N$
 $H_2N-CH_3-CH_3-N$
 $H_2N-CH_3-CH_3-N$
 $H_2N-CH_3-CH_3-N$

Co. No.	Ex. No.	*	a	Rª	R ^b	R°	Physical data
213	B16	2	N	CH₂C ₆ H ₅	Н	Н	HCl (1:4)
214	B16	5	N	Н	4-CH ₃	н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:3)
215	B16	5	N	CH ₃	4-CH ₃	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
216	B16	2	N	CH ₃	5-COOC ₂ H ₅	4-CH ₃	HCl (1:4)
217	B16	2	N	CH ₃	5-Cl	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
218	B16	5	N	2-propyl	2-SCH ₃	Н	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)
219	B16	5	N	C₂H₅	2-CH ₃	4-CH₃	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2); 2-propanolate (1:1)
220	B16	5	N	CH ₃	2-CH ₃	4-CH ₃	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
21	B17	2	СН	CH₃	5-CH ₃	Н	H ₂ O (1:1)
221	B27a	2	СН	CH ₃	5-COOC ₂ H ₅	H .	
222	B27a	2	CH	CH ₃	5-COOC ₂ H ₅	4-Br	

^{*} position monocyclic heterocycle

Table 10

Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	b	Rª	R ^b	R°	Physical data
14	B11	СН	СН	Н	COCH₃	Н	(cis); mp. 126
15	B11	СН	СН	Н	COCH ₃	Н	(trans); mp. 200
223	B16	СН	СН	Н	Н	н	(trans); HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1); mp. 210
29	B25a	СН	N	CH₃⁻	н	н	
224	B25a	СН	N	CH ₃	Н	CH ₃	HCl (1:5); H ₂ O (1:3)

Table 11

$$H_3C$$
 CH_3
 CH_3

L Physical data Co. Ex. R^{a} n p No. No. 6-chloro-2-pyridyl 225 **B**7 1 Η 8 В7 6-methyl-2-pyrazinyl 1 Н 226 **B**7 1 2 Н 2-pyridyl Н 5-methyl-2-pyrazinyl 227 **B**7 1 1 2-pyridyl 228 **B7** 1 1 CH₃ 2-pyridyl 229 **B**7 2 Η 4-methyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl 230 **B**7 1 1 H 231 **B**7 Н 3-methyl-2-pyrazinyl 1 1 232 **B**7 2 Н 2-pyridyl 1,4-dimethyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl 233 **B**7 1 1 Н 234 4-pyrimidinyl **B**7 1 1 Н 235 2-pyrimidinyl В7 0 1 6-(hydroxymethyl)-2-pyridyl 236 **B7** 1 Η 1,4-dimethyl-5-(-COOC₂H₅)-237 **B7** Н 1 1 1H-imidazol-2-yl

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	p	Rª	L	Physical data
238	B7	1	1	CH ₃	2-pyrazinyl	
239	B7	1	1	Н	3,5,6-trimethyl-2-pyrazinyl	
240	B7	1	1	Ethyl	2-pyrazinyl	
241	B7	1	1	CH ₃	6-methyl-2-pyrazinyl	
242	В7	1	1	н	5-chloro-1-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl	
243	B7	1	1	Н	4,6-dimethyl-2-pyridyl	
244	В7	1	1	Н	6-bromo-2-pyridyl	
245	B7	1	1	Н	6-(-COOC₂H₅)-2-pyridyl	
246	В7	1	1	Н	1,5-dimethyl-2-pyrrolyl	
247	B7	1	ı	Н	6-methoxy-2-pyridyl	
248	В7	1	1	н	4-chloro-2-pyridyl	
249	B7	1	1	Н	4-methoxy-2-pyridyl	
250	B7	1	1	Н	2-pyrimidinyl	
251	В7	1	1	н	3-methoxy-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	
252	B7	1	1	Н	6-methyl-3-(-O-C ₂ H ₄ -O-C ₂ H ₅)-2-pyridyl	
253	В7	1	1	CH₃	6-hydroxymethyl-2-pyridyl	
254	В7	1	1	Н	6-bromo-3-pyridyl	
9	B8	1	1	н	2-(1,1-dimethylethyl)-6-hydroxy-4- pyrimidinyl	
255	В8	1	1	Н	1-(phenylmethyl)-1 <i>H</i> -imidazol-2-yl	
256	B8	1	1.	Н	1-(2-propyl)-2-(-S-CH ₃)-1 <i>H</i> -imidazol-5-yl	
257	B8	1	1	CH ₃	6-chloro-2-pyridyl	
258	B8	1	1	Н	1-ethyl-2,4-dimethyl-1 <i>H</i> -imidazol-5-yl	H ₂ O (1:1)
259	B8	1	1	Н	3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	
260	B8	1	1	Н	4,6-dimethoxy-2-pyrimidinyl	
261	B8	1	1	Н	5-(-COOC ₂ H ₅)-2-pyrazinyl	
262	B8	1	1	Н	1,2,4-trimethyl-1 <i>H</i> -imidazol-5-yl	
10	B9a	1	1	Н	3-(-O-C ₂ H ₄ Cl)-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	
263	B9a	1	1	Н	6-(-CH ₂ -O-CH ₃)-2-pyridyl	
11	B9b	1	1	Н	3-[-O-C ₂ H ₄ -N(CH ₃) ₂]-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	
12	B10a	1	1	Н	6-chloro-3-pyridazinyl	
13	B10b	1	1	Н	3-pyridazinyl	
330	В7	1	1	Н	2-methyl-4-methoxycarbonyl-5-oxazolyl	}

Table 12

Co. No.	Ex. No.	R ^{a1} , R ^{a2}	R ^b	R°	a	R ^d	Physical data
264	В7	Н, Н	OCH ₃	6-OCH ₃	CH₂	Н	
265	B7	H, H	Н	н	N(CH ₃)	Н	
266	B7	Н, Н	Н	Н	$N(CH_2-C_6H_5)$	Н	
267	В7	H, H	Cl	6-C1	NH	CH₃	
268	В7	H, H	CH ₃	6-CH ₃	NH	CH ₃	
269	В7	H, H	H	4-Cl	NH	CH₃	
270	В7	Н, Н	H	7-Cl	NH	CH₃	
271	В7	H, H	H	6-NO ₂	NH	CH₃	
272	В7	Н, Н	NO ₂	Н	NH	CH ₃	
273	B7	Н, Н	Н	7-CH₃	NH	CH₃	
274	B7	Н, Н	H	4-CH ₃	NH	CH₃	H ₂ O (1:1)
275	B7	Н, Н	Н	6-ethoxy- carbonyl	NH	СН₃	
276	B7	Н, Н	н	6-hydroxy- methyl	NH	CH ₃	
277	В7	н, н	CF ₃	н	NH	CH ₃	
278	В7	н, н	Н	6-CF ₃	NH	CH ₃	
279	В7	н, н	Н	н	NH	-CO-N(CH ₃) ₂	
280	B7	н, н	CI	н	NH	CH₃	
16	B12	CH ₃ , CH ₃	н	н	NH	Н	
17	B13	H, H	-NH ₂	Н	NH	CH ₃	
281	B13	Н, Н	Н	6-NH ₂	NH	CH₃	
19	B15	-СН₂ОН, Н	H	Н	NH	Н	

Table 13

$$L = N \underbrace{ \begin{pmatrix} (CH_2)_p \\ (CH_2)_0 \end{pmatrix} }_{R^b} (CH_2)_{\overline{n}} (NH)_{\overline{m}}$$

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	m	0	p	a	Rª	R ^b	L	Physical data
6	B5	1	0	2	1	СН	Н	Н	Н	
283	B27a	1	0	1	1	N	н	н	-(CH ₂) ₂ -NH ₂	HCl (1:4), H ₂ O (1:1); 2-propanolate (1:1)
284	B27a	1	1	1	1	N	H	н	-(CH ₂) ₂ -NH ₂	HCI (1:1)
285	B27a	1	1	0	2	СН	н	Н	-(CH ₂) ₂ -NH ₂	HCl (1:4), H ₂ O (1:1); mp. 205°C
286	B4	1	1	0	2	CH	Н	н	н	
30	B26	0	1	1	1	СН	CH ₃	Н	-CH(CH ₃)-CH ₂ -NH ₂	mp. 85°C

Co. Ex. R_{a} . L Physical data No. No. 288 B25a Η $-NH-(CH_2)_2-NH_2$ 289 **B**4 Н 309 B19 Н -NH-(CH₂)₃-NH₂ HCl (1:3); H₂O (1:2) 347 B16 Н $-NH-CH(CH_3)-(CH_2)_2-NH-(CH_2)_2-NH_2$ HCl(1:4); 2-propanolate (1:1) 345 $-N(CH_3)-(CH_2)_3-NH-(CH_2)_2-NH_2$ B19 HCl (1:4); H₂O (1:1) Н 346 B19 Н HCl (1:4); H₂O (1:1) .NH~

Co. No.	Ex. No.	R _a .	L	Physical data
341	B25a	Н	NH_NH ₂	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
313	B25c	ОН	-NHCH2CH(OH)CH2NH2	

Table 15

$$R^{f}$$
 H_2N -(CH₂)_n-CH-CH₂-N
 R^{a}
 R^{a}
 R^{b}
 R^{b}
 R^{d}
 R^{d}

Co. No.	Ex. No.	а	n	Rª	R ^b	R ^c	\mathbb{R}^d	R ^f	Physical data
290	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH₃	7-CH ₃	Н	Н	HCl (1:4);H ₂ O (1:4)
291	В22ь	N	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	7-CH ₃	Н	CH-(CH ₃) ₂	-
292	В22ь	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	7-CH ₃	Н	CH ₃	HCl (1:4);H ₂ O (1:3)
293	В22ь	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	7-CH ₃	н	CH-(CH ₃) ₂	-
195	В22ь	СН	0	6-CH₃	Н	7-CH₃	Н	CH-(CH ₃) ₂	-
303	B28	СН	1	6-CH ₃	Н	7-CH ₃	H	ОН	H ₂ O (1:1)
304	В22ь	СН	0	6-CH₃	H	6-CH₃	н	$CH-(CH_3)_2$	
342	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	5-Cl	7-CH ₃	Н	HCl (1:4),
									2-propanolate (1:1)
348	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH₃	5-Br	7-CH ₃	Н	HCl (1:4)
351	В22ь	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH₃	4-CH₃	Н	CH-(CH ₃) ₂	HCl (1:4);H ₂ O (1:1)
340	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH₃	4-CH ₃	Н	H	HCl (1:4);H₂O (1:2)
344	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH₃	4-CH ₃	6-Cl	Н	HCl (1:4);H₂O (1:4)
349	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH₃	5-(4-fluoro-	Н	Н	HCl (1:4);H₂O (1:2)
						benzoyl)			
350	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH₃	6-(4-fluoro-	н	Н	HCl (1:4);H ₂ O (1:2)
						benzoyl)			
355	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH₃	7-CH ₃	Н	н	
356	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	7-CH ₃	Н	н	C ₄ H ₆ O ₄ (1:1);H ₂ O(1:1)
357	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH₃	7-CH ₃	Н	н	C ₄ H ₆ O ₅ (1:1);H ₂ O(1:2)
353	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	7-CH ₃	Н	Н	HCl(1:4);H ₂ O(1:5)

Table 16

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_2 \longrightarrow P \\ 3N \longrightarrow A^{a} \end{array}$$

Co. No.		a	b	R ^a	L	P	Physical data
	В22ь	СН	СН	5-Cl	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-CH(CH ₃) ₂	H ₃ C _N	
297	В22ь	СН	СН	5-Cl	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-CH(CH ₃) ₂	H ₃ C N	H ₂ O (1:1)
298	В22ь	СН	СН	Н	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-CH(CH ₃) ₂	H ₃ C N CI	
310	Віь	СН	N	Н	н	HO CH ₃	HBr (1:3).H ₂ O (1:1).C ₂ H ₆ O (1:1)
302	Bla	СН	СН	5-CI	Н	H ₃ C N	
321	B27a	7	СН	Н	-CH ₂ -CH ₂ -NH ₂	2,4-dimethyl-5-	
339	В8	N	СН	7-CH₃	-C(=O)-O-CH ₂ -CH ₃	HO CH ₃	
336	В9ь	СН	СН	н	-C(=O)-O-C(CH ₃) ₃	CH ₃	
337	B25a	СН	СН	Н	-C(=O)-O-CH ₂ -CH ₃	H ₂ N	mp. 171°C
352	В7	СН	СН	7-CH ₃	-(CH ₂) ₃ -NH- C(=0)OC(CH ₃) ₃	HO_CH ₃	
354	B16	СН	СН	7-CH ₃	-(CH ₂) ₃ -NH-CH=O	HO CH ₃	.HCl(1:4)

-90-

WO 01/00611 PCT/EP00/05676

Table 17

Co. No.	Ex. No.	а	b	С	R ^a	R ^b	R°	L	Physical data
343	В1ь	СН	NH	СН	Н	5-Br	7-CH ₃	3-hydroxy-6-methyl- 2-pyridinyl	HBr (1:3)
338	В1ь	СН	NH	СН	н	н	7-CH₃	3-hydroxy-6-methyl-	
25	D.00			OVI	CH(CH ₃) ₂	,,	,,	2-pyridinyl	1089C
335	B20	N	NH	CH	—CH ₂ —ĊH—NH ₂	H	Н	2-pyridinyl	mp. 198°C
334	B27a	N	NH	CH	(CH ₂) ₂ -NH ₂	Н	н	2-pyridinyl	mp. 186
322	B27a	Ν	CH₂	N	-(CH ₂) ₂ -NH ₂	Н	н	2-methyl-5-oxazolyl	
314	В27ь	СН	CH₂	N	-(CH ₂) ₂ -NH ₂	Н	н	5-methoxymethyl-2-	
			}				<u> </u>	furanyl	<u> </u>

5 C. Pharmacological example

10

15

20

Example C1: In vitro screening for activity against Respiratory Syncytial Virus. The percent protection against cytopathology caused by viruses (antiviral activity or IC_{50}) achieved by tested compounds and their cytotoxicity (CC_{50}) were both calculated from dose-response curves. The selectivity of the antiviral effect is represented by the selectivity index (SI), calculated by dividing the CC_{50} (cytotoxic dose for 50% of the cells) by the IC_{50} (antiviral activity for 50 % of the cells).

Automated tetrazolium-based colorimetric assays were used for determination of IC₅₀ and CC₅₀ of test compounds. Flat-bottom, 96-well plastic microtiter trays were filled with 180 μ l of Eagle's Basal Medium, supplemented with 5 % FCS (0% for FLU) and 20 mM Hepes buffer. Subsequently, stock solutions (7.8 x final test concentration) of compounds were added in 45 μ l volumes to a series of triplicate wells so as to allow simultaneous evaluation of their effects on virus- and mock-infected cells. Five five-fold dilutions were made directly in the microtiter trays using a robot system. Untreated virus controls, and HeLa cell controls were included in each test. Approximately 100 TCID50 of Respiratory Syncytial Virus was added to two of the three rows in a volume of 50 μ l. The same volume of medium was added to the third row to measure the cytotoxicity of the compounds at the same concentrations as those used to measure the antiviral activity. After two hours of incubation, a suspension (4 x 10⁵ cells/ml) of HeLa

10

cells was added to all wells in a volume of $50\mu l$. The cultures were incubated at $37^{\circ}C$ in a 5% CO₂ atmosphere. Seven days after infection the cytotoxicity and the antiviral activity was examined spectrophotometrically. To each well of the microtiter tray, $25~\mu l$ of a solution of MTT (3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-diphenyltetrazolium bromide) was added. The trays were further incubated at $37^{\circ}C$ for 2 hours, after which the medium was removed from each cup. Solubilization of the formazan crystals was achieved by adding $100~\mu l$ 2-propanol. Complete dissolution of the formazan crystals were obtained after the trays have been placed on a plate shaker for 10~min. Finally, the absorbances were read in an eight-channel computer-controlled photometer (Multiskan MCC, Flow Laboratories) at two wavelengths (540 and 690 nm). The absorbance measured at 690 nm was automatically subtracted from the absorbance at 540 nm, so as to eliminate the effects of non-specific absorption.

Particular IC₅₀, CC₅₀ and SI values are listed in Table 18 hereinbelow.

15 <u>Table 18</u>

Co. No.	IC ₅₀ (μM)	CC ₅₀ (µM)	SI
290	0.00013	>0.010	>79
292	0.00032	63.85	199526
351	0.00063	50.04	79433
297	0.00251	>99.93	>39811
296	0.00631	19.95	3162
27	0.0126	>100.08	>7943
192	0.0631	63.1	1000
144	0.1259	50.11	398
222	0.5012	39.59	79
142	1.2589	40.28	32
145	2.5119	>50.24	>20

Claims

10

15

20

1. Use of a compound for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of viral infections, wherein the compound is a compound of formula

$$Q = \begin{bmatrix} R^1 & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ Q & & & \\$$

a prodrug, N-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex or stereochemically isomeric form thereof, wherein

-a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- represents a bivalent radical of formula

-CH=CH-CH=CH- (a-1); -N=CH-CH=CH- (a-2); -CH=N-CH=CH- (a-3); -CH=CH-N=CH- (a-4); or -CH=CH-CH=N- (a-5);

wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy,

 $C_{1\text{-6}}$ alkyloxy, polyhalo $C_{1\text{-6}}$ alkyl, carboxyl, amino $C_{1\text{-6}}$ alkyl, mono- or di $(C_{1\text{-4}}$ alkyl)amino $C_{1\text{-6}}$ alkyl, $C_{1\text{-6}}$ alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxy $C_{1\text{-6}}$ alkyl, or a radical of formula

wherein =Z is =O, =CH-C(=O)-NR 5a R 5b , =CH $_2$, =CH-C $_{1-6}$ alkyl, =N-OH or =N-O-C $_{1-6}$ alkyl;

Q is a radical of formula

wherein Alk is C₁₋₆alkanediyl;

10

Y¹ is a bivalent radical of formula –NR²- or –CH(NR²R⁴)-; X¹ is NR⁴, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, O, CH₂, C(=O), C(=CH₂), CH(OH), CH(CH₃), CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂; X² is a direct bond, CH₂, C(=O), NR⁴, C₁₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, NR⁴-C₁₋₄alkyl; t is 2, 3, 4 or 5; u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5; v is 2 or 3; and

whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced by R³; with the proviso that when R³ is hydroxy or C₁₋₆alkyloxy, then R³ can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

G is a direct bond or C₁₋₁₀alkanediyl;

- R¹ is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from piperidinyl, piperazinyl, pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, furanyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, thienyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, and isothiazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;
- R² is hydrogen, formyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonyl, Hetcarbonyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂, or C₁₋₁₀alkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂ and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl, C₂₋₅alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C₁. 6alkyl)amino, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;
- R³ is hydrogen, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, arylC₁₋₆alkyl or arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy; R⁴ is hydrogen, C₁₋₆alkyl or arylC₁₋₆alkyl; R^{5a}, R^{5b}, R^{5c} and R^{5d} each independently are hydrogen or C₁₋₆alkyl; or R^{5a} and R^{5b}, or R^{5c} and R^{5d} taken together form a bivalent radical of formula -(CH₂)_s-wherein s is 4 or 5;
- R⁶ is hydrogen, C₁₋₄alkyl, formyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonyl or C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl;

aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, and C₁₋₆alkyloxy;

Het is pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl.

5

15

25

2. A compound of formula (I')

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} R^1 & & & \\ & & & \\ Q & & & \\ & & & \\ N & & & \\ & & &$$

a prodrug, N-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex or stereochemically isomeric form thereof, wherein

 $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ represents a radical of formula

-CH=CH-CH=CH-

(a-1);

-N=CH-CH=CH-

(a-2);

-CH=N-CH=CH-

(a-3);

-CH=CH-N=CH-

(a-4); or

-CH=CH-CH=N-

(a-5);

wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, carboxyl, aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, mono- or

di(C₁₋₄alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, or a

20 radical of formula

wherein =Z is =O, =CH-C(=O)-NR^{5a}R^{5b}, =CH₂, =CH-C₁₋₆alkyl, =N-OH or =N-O-C₁₋₆alkyl;

Q is a radical of formula

$$Y^{1}$$
 $CH-X^{1}$ Y^{1} $CH-X^{2}$ Y^{1} $CH-X^{2}$ $CH-X^{2}$ $(b-5)$ $(b-6)$ $(b-7)$ $(b-8)$

wherein Alk is C₁₋₆alkanediyl;

Y¹ is a bivalent radical of formula --NR²- or --CH(NR²R⁴)-; X¹ is NR⁴, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, O, CH₂, C(=O), C(=CH₂), CH(OH), CH(CH₃), CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂; X² is a direct bond, CH₂, C(=O), NR⁴, C₁₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, NR⁴-C₁₋₄alkyl; t is 2, 3, 4 or 5; u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5; v is 2 or 3; and

whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced by R³; with the proviso that when R³ is hydroxy or C₁₋₆alkyloxy, then R³ can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

G is a direct bond or C₁₋₁₀alkanediyl;

- R¹ is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyl-carbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;
- R² is hydrogen, formyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂, or C₁₋₁₀alkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂ and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl, C₂₋₅alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;
- R³ is hydrogen, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, arylC₁₋₆alkyl or arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy; R⁴ is hydrogen, C₁₋₆alkyl or arylC₁₋₆alkyl; R^{5a}, R^{5b}, R^{5c} and R^{5d} each independently are hydrogen or C₁₋₆alkyl; or

15

R^{5a} and R^{5b}, or R^{5c} and R^{5d} taken together form a bivalent radical of formula -(CH₂)_s-wherein s is 4 or 5;

R⁶ is hydrogen, C₁₋₄alkyl, formyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonyl or C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl;

aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, and C₁₋₆alkyloxy;

provided that when G is methylene, and R^1 is 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 6-methyl-2-pyridyl, 2-pyrazinyl or 5-methyl-imidazol-4-yl, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - is -CH=CH-CH=CH- or -N=CH-CH=CH-, then Q is other than

$$H_{1} \longrightarrow NH_{-}$$
; $H_{1} \longrightarrow CH_{2}^{-}$; $H_{2} \longrightarrow CH_{2}^{-}$; $H_{3} \longrightarrow CH_{2}^{-}$; $H_{2} \longrightarrow CH_{2}^{-}$; $H_{3} \longrightarrow CH_{2}^{-}$; $H_$

3. A compound as claimed in claim 2 wherein the following restrictions apply : when Q is $R^2 - N$

wherein X^1 is NR^4 , O, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, CH_2 , C(=O), C(=CH₂) or CH(CH₃), then R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.

4. A compound as claimed in claim 2 wherein the following restrictions apply: when Q is $R^2 - N$ $X^1 - X^1 - X^$

wherein X^1 is NR^4 , O, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, CH_2 , C(=O), $C(=CH_2)$ or $CH(CH_3)$, then R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, pyridyl substituted with 1 or 2 C_{1-6} alkyloxy, pyrazinyl, pyrrolyl, pyrrolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.

5. A compound as claimed in claim 2 wherein the following restrictions apply:

when Q is R²—N

x¹—

wherein X^1 is NR⁴, O, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, CH₂, C(=O), C(=CH₂) or CH(CH₃), then R¹ is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C₁₋₆alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C₁₋₆alkyl.

6. A compound as claimed in claim 2 wherein the following restrictions apply:

then R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.

10 7. A compound as claimed in claim 2 wherein the following restrictions apply:

when Q is
$$R^2 - N - X^2 -$$

wherein X^2 is CH_2 or a direct bond, then R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.

15

- 8. A compound as claimed in claim 2 wherein the compound is selected from (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride monohydrate; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl-3-
- pyridinol; (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(1,4-dimethyl-IH-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-IH-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate; (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-IH-benzimidazol-2-amine; (\pm)-2-[[2-[(3-amino-2-hydroxypropyl)amino]-IH-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol; N-[1-
- 25 (2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[[3-(2-ethoxyethoxy)-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl]methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride dihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-chloro-1,4-dimethyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(2-chloro-1,4-dimethyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-1H-
- benzimidazol-2-amine; (\pm)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-methyl-1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-IH-benzimidazol-2-amine; (\pm)-N-[1-(2-aminopropyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyl]-IH-benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; (\pm)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyl]-IH-
- benzimidazol-2-amine; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[[3-(2-chloroethoxy)-

6-methyl-2-pyridinyl]methyll-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[3-amino-2pyridinyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride; (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-3-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3pyridinol; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-6-chloro-4-methyl-IHbenzimidazol-1-yllmethyll-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride 2-propanolate (1:1); (\pm) -2-[2-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-<math>IHbenzimidazol-1-vl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol; (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminopropyl)-4piperidinyl laminol-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyll-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride dihydrate; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-6-bromo-4-methyl-1Hbenzimidazol-1-vllmethyll-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride; 2-[[2-[[1-(2aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3pyridinol tetrahydrochloride monohydrate; (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3pyridinol; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-[(6methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyll-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; a prodrug, N-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex and stereochemically isomeric form thereof.

9. A compound selected from

5

10

15

20

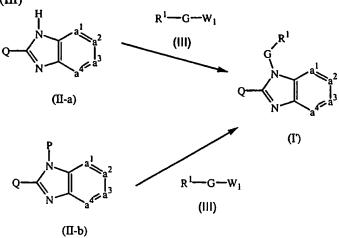
2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-5-chloro-7-methyl-1H-25 benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride tetrahydrate; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1Hbenzimidazol-2-amine; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2,5-dimethyl-4oxazolyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; 4-[[3-30 [[5-(methoxymethyl)-2-furanyl]methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidineetanamine; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(5-methyl-3isoxazolyl)methyl]-IH-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1Hbenzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-35 methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-[(2,4-dimethyl-5oxazolyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine; 4-[[3-[(2-methyl-5-

oxazolyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperazineethanamine; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(4-thiazolylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2amine; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(5-phenyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3yl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride; 5-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-5 4-piperidinyl]amino-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl-2-oxazolemethanol tetrahydrochloride dihydrate; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3-methyl-5isoxazolyl)methyl]-IH-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; 4-[[1-[[2-(dimethylamino)-4-thiazolyl]methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1piperidineethanamine tetrahydrochloride monohydrate 2-propanolate (1:1); ethyl 10 5-[[2-[[1-[2-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-2-methyl-4-oxazolecarboxylate; 4-[[1-[(2-methyl-4thiazolyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidineethanamine; N-[1-(2aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-3-furanyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2amine; ethyl 4-[[3-[(3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-7-methyl-3H-15 imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate; 1,1-dimethylethyl 4-[[1-[[3-[2-(dimethylamino)ethoxy]-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl]methyl]-1Hbenzimidazol-2-yl]amino-1-piperidinecarboxylate; ethyl 4-[[1-[(3-amino-2pyridinyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate; N-[1-(6methyl-2-pyridinyl)-IH-benzimidazol-2-yl]-1-(3-pyridinylcarbonyl)-4-20 piperidinamine; a prodrug, N-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex and stereochemically isomeric form thereof.

- 25 10. A compound as claimed in anyone of claims 2 to 9 for use as a medicine.
 - 11. Use of a compound as claimed in claim 9 for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of viral infections.
- 12. Use of a compound according to claim 1 or 11 wherein said viral infection is a respiratory syncytial virus infection.
 - 13. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and as active ingredient a therapeutically effective amount of a compound as claimed in claim 2 or claim 9.
 - 14. A process of preparing a composition as claimed in claim 13 <u>characterized in that</u> a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier is intimately mixed with a therapeutically effective amount of a compound as claimed in claim 2 or claim 9.

15. A process of preparing a compound as claimed in claim 2, characterized by

a) reacting an intermediate of formula (II-a) or (II-b) with an intermediate of formula (III)



with R^1 , G, Q and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 2, and W_1 being a suitable leaving group, in the presence of a suitable base and in a suitable reaction-inert solvent;

10 b) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (IV)

5

15

$$P = Q_1 = \begin{pmatrix} R^1 \\ Q \\ N \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} A^1 \\ A^2 \\ A^3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$H = Q_1 \begin{pmatrix} A^1 \\ N \\ A^2 \\ A^3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(IV)$$

$$(I'-a)$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 2, H-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen, and P being a protective group;

c) deprotecting and reducing an intermediate of formula (IV-a)

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 2, H-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen,

20

 $Q_{1a}(CH=CH)$ being defined as Q_1 provided that Q_1 comprises an unsaturated bond, and P being a protective group

d) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (V)

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 2, and H_2N-Q_2 being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen;

e) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VI)

$$P = \begin{pmatrix} R^1 & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ P & & & \\$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 2, and H_2N-Q_2 being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen, and P being a protective group;

15 f) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VII) or (VIII)

$$P = Q_{1} \cdot (OP) \longrightarrow \begin{pmatrix} R^{1} & & & \\ &$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 2, H-Q₁·(OH) being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen and provided that Q comprises a hydroxy moiety, H₂N-Q₂·(OH) being defined as Q

10

15

according to claim 2 provided that both R⁶ substituents are hydrogen or R² and R⁴ are both hydrogen and provided that Q comprises a hydroxy moiety, and P being a protective group;

g) amination of an intermediate of formula (IX)

$$(O =)Q_3 \xrightarrow{N} \begin{bmatrix} R^1 \\ a_1 \\ a_2 \end{bmatrix}$$
 amination
$$H_2N - Q_3H \xrightarrow{N} \begin{bmatrix} A^1 \\ A^2 \\ A^3 \end{bmatrix}$$
 (IX)

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 2, and H_2N-Q_3H being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen, and the carbon adjacent to the nitrogen carrying the R^6 , or R^2 and R^4 substituents contains at least one hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable amination reagent;

h) reducing an intermediate of formula (X)

with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and H₂N-CH₂-Q₄ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that Q comprises a -CH₂-NH₂ moiety, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent;

i) reducing an intermediate of formula (X-a)

with G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 2, $H_2N-CH_2-Q_4$ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that Q comprises a $-CH_2-NH_2$ moiety, and R¹ being defined as R¹ according to claim 2 provided that it comprises at least one substituent, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent and suitable solvent;

25 j) amination of an intermediate of formula (XI)

$$CH_2-Q_4$$
 CH_2-Q_4
 CH_2-Q_4

with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and H₂N-CH₂-CHOH-CH₂-Q₄-being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that Q comprises a CH₂-CHOH-CH₂-NH₂ moiety, in the presence of a suitable amination reagent;

k) reacting an intermediate of formula (XII) with formic acid, formamide and ammonia

5

10

15

20

$$C_{1^{-4}alkyl} = C_{1^{-4}alkyl} = C_{1^{-4}a$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 2, and H-C(=O)- Q_1 being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is formyl;

 amination of an intermediate of formula (XIII) by reaction with an intermediate of formula (XIV)

$$(O=)Q_{5} \xrightarrow{R^{1}} A_{3}^{2} + R^{2a} \xrightarrow{NH_{2}} A_{2}^{2a} \xrightarrow{NH_{2}} R^{2a} \xrightarrow{NH_{2}} R^{$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 2, and R^{2a} -NH-HQ₅ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R^2 is other than hydrogen and is represented by R^{2a} , R^4 is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R^2 and R^4 substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent;

m) reducing an intermediate of formula (XV)

10

15

$$(R^{6})_{2}N-(C_{1}-9alkyl)-NH-HQ_{5} \xrightarrow{a^{1}}_{a^{2}} \xrightarrow{a^{2}}_{a^{3}} \xrightarrow{reduction} (R^{6})_{2}N-(C_{1}-9alkyl)-NH-HQ_{5} \xrightarrow{N}_{a^{1}}_{a^{2}} \xrightarrow{a^{1}}_{a^{3}}$$

$$(XV) \qquad (I'-c-1)$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 2, and $(R^6)_2N$ -[$(C_{1.9}alkyl)CH_2OH$]-NH-HQ5 being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R^2 is other than hydrogen and is represented by $C_{1.10}alkyl$ substituted with $N(R_6)_2$ and with hydroxy, and the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, carries also two hydrogen atoms, and provided that R^4 is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R^2 and R^4 substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, with a suitable reducing agent;

n) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XVI), (XVI-a) or (XVI-b)

$$P = Q_{1} \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{a^{1} a^{2}} A \xrightarrow{a^{2} a^{3}} A \xrightarrow{A} Q_{1} \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{A} Q_{1} \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{A} Q_{1} \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{A} Q_{1} \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{A} Q_{2} \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{A} Q_{1} \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{A} Q_{2} \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{A} Q_{1} \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{A} Q_{2} \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{A} Q_{2} \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{A} Q_{1} \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{A} Q_{2} \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow$$

with G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 2, and H-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen,

-105-

and R^{1a}-(A-O-H)_w, R^{1a'}-(A-O-H)₂ and R^{1a''}-(A-O-H)₃ being defined as R¹ according to claim 2 provided that R¹ is substituted with hydroxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, or HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, with w being an integer from 1 to 4 and P or P₁ being a suitable protecting group, with a suitable acid.

5

o) amination of an intermediate of formula (XVII)

$$C_{1^{-4}alkyl} \longrightarrow C_{-Alk} \longrightarrow R^{2}R^{4}N \longrightarrow$$

with R^1 , G, $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ -, Alk, X^1 R^2 and R^4 defined as in claim 2, in the presence of a suitable amination agent;

10

p) amination of an intermediate of formula (XIX)

$$\begin{array}{c} O \\ H - C - C_{1-3}alkyl - NR^4 - \\ (XIX) \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} O \\ A^{1} \\ A^{2} \\ A^{3} \\ A^{2} \\ A^{3} \end{array} + Q_{6}N - H \\ (XX) \\ Q_{6}N - CH_{2} - C_{1-3}alkyl - NR^{4} - \\ N - A^{1} \\ A^{2} \\ A^{3} \end{array}$$

$$(II-p)$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 2, and Q_6N - CH_2 - C_{1-3} alkyl- NR^4 being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that in the definition of Q, X^2 is C_{2-4} alkyl- NR^4 , in the presence of a suitable amination agent;

15

and, if desired, converting compounds of formula (I') into each other following art-known transformations, and further, if desired, converting the compounds of formula (I'), into a therapeutically active non-toxic acid addition salt by treatment with an acid, or into a therapeutically active non-toxic base addition salt by treatment with a base, or conversely, converting the acid addition salt form into the free base by treatment with alkali, or converting the base addition salt into the free acid by treatment with acid; and, if desired, preparing stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes, quaternary amines or *N*-oxide forms thereof.

20

WO 01/00611 PCT/EP00/05676

-106-

- 16. A product containing (a) a compound as defined in claim 2 or 9, and (b) another antiviral compound, as a combined preparation for simultaneous, separate or sequential use in the treatment or the prevention of viral infections.
- 5 17. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and as active ingredients (a) a compound as defined in claim 2 or 9, and (b) another antiviral compound.



(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date 4 January 2001 (04.01.2001)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number WO 01/00611 A1

- (51) International Patent Classification⁷: C07D 401/06, 471/04, 401/14, 413/14, 417/14, 405/14, A61K 31/501, 31/4439, 31/454, 31/4184, 31/4188, A61P 31/14 // (C07D 471/04, 235:00, 221:00)
- (21) International Application Number: PCT/EP00/05676
- (22) International Filing Date: 20 June 2000 (20.06.2000)
- (25) Filing Language:

English

(26) Publication Language:

English

(30) Priority Data:

99202087.5

28 June 1999 (28.06.1999) E 11 February 2000 (11.02.2000) E

- 00200452.1
- I designated States except 1/5):
- (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA N.V. [BE/BE]; Patent Department, Turnhoutseweg 30, B-2340 Beerse (BE).
- (72) Inventors; and
- (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): JANSSENS, Frans,

Eduard [BE/BE]; Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30, B-2340 Beerse (BE). MEERSMAN, Kathleen, Petrus, Marie-José [BE/BE]; Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30, B-2340 Beerse (BE). SOM-MEN, François, Maria [BE/BE]; Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30, B-2340 Beerse (BE). GUILLE-MONT, Jérôme, Emile, Georges [FR/FR]; Janssen Cilag S.A., 1, Rue Camille Desmoulins, TSA 91003, Cedex 9, F-92787 Issy-les-Moulineaux (FR). LACRAMPE, Jean, Fernand, Armand [FR/FR]; Janssen Cilag S.A., 1, Rue Camille Desmoulins, Tsa 91003, Cedex 9, F-92787 Issy-les-Moulineaux (FR). ANDRIES, Koenraad, Jozef, Lodewijk, Marcel [BE/BE]; Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30, B-2340 Beerse (BE).

- (74) Agent: QUAGHEBEUR, Luc; Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30, B-2340 Beerse (BE).
- (81) Designated States (national): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NO,

[Continued on next page]

(54) Title: RESPIRATORY SYNCYTIAL VIRUS REPLICATION INHIBITORS

$$\begin{pmatrix} R^4 & (b-1) & R^2 & K^4 &$$

$$Y_{(CH_2)_b}^{1} = (b-4)$$
 $Y_{(CH_2)_b}^{1} = (b-5)$ $Y_{(CH_2)_b}^{1} = x^2 - (b-6)$

01/00611 A

(57) Abstract: This invention concerns the use of compounds of formula (I) wherein $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ is a radical of formula -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -N=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-N=CH-, -CH=CH-N=CH-N- wherein each hydrogen atom may optionally be substituted; Q is a radical of formulas (b-1), (b-2), (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7), (b-8), G is a direct bond or C₁₋₁₀alkanediyl; R¹ is an optionally substituted monocyclic heterocycle; for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of viral infections, in particular RSV infections. Certain compounds of formula (I) are new.

WO 01/00611 A1



NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW.

(84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

With international search report.

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

nal Application No PCT/EP 00/05676

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
IPC 7 C07D401/06 C07D471/04 C07D405/14 A61K31/501

A61K31/4439 A61K31/454

C07D401/14

CO7D417/14 A61K31/4184

A61K31/4188 A61P31/14

//(C07D471/04,235:00,221:00)

C07D413/14

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols) IPC 7 A61K A61P C07D

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

CHEM ABS Data, EPO-Internal, WPI Data, PAJ

C. DOCOM	C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT						
Category °	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.					
Y	EP 0 099 139 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 25 January 1984 (1984-01-25) cited in the application claims	1-17					
Y	EP 0 144 101 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 12 June 1985 (1985-06-12) cited in the application claims	1-17					
Y	EP 0 145 037 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 19 June 1985 (1985-06-19) cited in the application claims	1-17					
	-/						

Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.	χ Patent family members are listed in annex.
"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified) "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	"T" tater document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art. "8" document member of the same patent family
Date of the actual completion of the international search	Date of mailing of the international search report
26 September 2000	13/10/2000
Name and mailing address of the ISA	Authorized officer
European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl, Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016	Allard, M

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (July 1992)



Inter onal Application No PCT/EP 00/05676

Catana	ation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT	
Category °	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to daim No.
Y	EP 0 151 824 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 21 August 1985 (1985-08-21) cited in the application claims	1-17
Y	EP 0 151 826 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 21 August 1985 (1985-08-21) cited in the application claims	1-17
Y	EP 0 232 937 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 19 August 1987 (1987-08-19) cited in the application claims	1-17
Y	EP 0 295 742 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 21 December 1988 (1988-12-21) cited in the application claims	1-17
Y	EP 0 297 661 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 4 January 1989 (1989-01-04) cited in the application claims	1-17
Y	EP 0 307 014 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 15 March 1989 (1989-03-15) cited in the application claims	1-17
Υ	EP 0 393 738 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 24 October 1990 (1990-10-24) claims	1-17
Y	EP 0 005 318 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 14 November 1979 (1979-11-14) cited in the application claims	1-17
Y	WO 92 01697 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 6 February 1992 (1992-02-06) cited in the application claims	1-17
Y	WO 92 01687 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 6 February 1992 (1992-02-06) cited in the application claims	1-17
Υ	WO 98 10764 A (UCB, S.A.) 19 March 1998 (1998-03-19) claims	1-17

1



Inter onal Application No PCT/EP 00/05676

Category ° Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages Relevant to co	.(Continuatio	on) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT	101/21 00	
18 August 1982 (1982-08-18) claims A R.R. TIDWELL ET AL: "Aromatic amidines: comparison of their ability to block respiratory syncytial virus induced cell fusion and to inhibit plasmin, urokinase, thrombin, and trypsin" JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY., vol. 26, no. 2, 1983, pages 294-298, XP002123605 ISSN: 0022-2623 the whole document A CHIBA T ET AL: "Inhibitory effect of pyridobenzazoles on virus replication in vitro" BIOLOGICAL & PHARMACEUTICAL BULLETIN, vol. 18, no. 8, August 1995 (1995-08), pages 1081-3, XP002148491		<u></u>		Relevant to claim No.
comparison of their ability to block respiratory syncytial virus induced cell fusion and to inhibit plasmin, urokinase, thrombin, and trypsin" JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY., vol. 26, no. 2, 1983, pages 294-298, XP002123605 ISSN: 0022-2623 the whole document CHIBA T ET AL: "Inhibitory effect of pyridobenzazoles on virus replication in vitro" BIOLOGICAL & PHARMACEUTICAL BULLETIN, vol. 18, no. 8, August 1995 (1995-08), pages 1081-3, XP002148491	,	18 August 1982 (1982-08-18)		1-17
pyridobenzazoles on virus replication in vitro" BIOLOGICAL & PHARMACEUTICAL BULLETIN, vol. 18, no. 8, August 1995 (1995-08), pages 1081-3, XP002148491		comparison of their ability to block respiratory syncytial virus induced cell fusion and to inhibit plasmin, urokinase, thrombin, and trypsin" JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY., vol. 26, no. 2, 1983, pages 294-298, XP002123605 ISSN: 0022-2623		1
		pyridobenzazoles on virus replication in vitro" BIOLOGICAL & PHARMACEUTICAL BULLETIN, vol. 18, no. 8, August 1995 (1995-08), pages 1081-3, XP002148491		1

1

information on patent family members

Inter had Application No PCT/EP 00/05676

			Potont family	<u> </u>
Patent document cited in search report	Publication date		latent family member(s)	Publication date
EP 0099139 A	25-01-1984	US	4556660 A	03-12-1985
		AT	25459 T	15-02-1987
		AU	563363 B	09-07-1987
		AU	1672883 A	17-01-1985
		BG	40655 A	15-01-1987
		CA	1266267 A	27-02-1990
		DE	3369784 D	19-03-1987
		DK	318583 A	13-01-1984
		ES	524029 D	16-11-1985
		ES	8602768 A	16-03-1986 13-01 - 1984
		FI GR	832521 A,B, 81366 A	11-12-1984
		HU	203550 B	28-08-1991
		IE	56077 B	10-04-1991
		IL	69198 A	30-01-1987
		IN	156065 A	04-05-1985
		JP	59021680 A	03-02-1984
		KR	8701510 B	20-08-1987
		NO	832524 A,B,	13-01-1984
		NZ	204759 A	13-12-1985
		PH	22009 A	02-05-1988
		PL	242970 A	13-08-1985
		PT	77012 A,B	01-08-1983
		RO	87533 A	31-10-1985
		SU	1297728 A	15-03-1987
		US	4820822 A	11-04-1989
		US	RE33833 E	25-02-1992
		ZA	8305044 A	27-02-1985
		ZW	15583 A	30-01-1983
		US 	4760074 A	26-07-1988
EP 0144101 A	12-06-1985	AT	60769 T	15-02-1991
		AU	579121 B	17-11-1988
		AU	3602884 A	06-06-1985
		BG	43188 A	15-04-1988
		CA	1257258 A	11-07-1989
		CA	1330081 A	07-06-1994 17-01-1006
		CZ	8409128 A	17-01-1996 14-03-1991
		DE DK	3484096 D 567884 A	31-05-1991 31-05-1985
		FI	844708 A,B,	31-05-1985
		FI	884037 A,B,	01-09-1988
		GR	81097 A	04-04-1985
		HU	35677 A	29-07-1985
		HU	199837 B	28-03-1990
		IL	73686 A	31-05-1988
		, JP	6092389 B	16-11-1994
		JP	60149583 A	07-08-1985
		KR	8800044 B	20-02-1988
		1/1/	U	
		KR	8800489 B	08-04-1988
		KR	8800489 B	08-04-1988
		KR KR	8800489 B 8800785 B	08-04-1988 09-05-1988
		KR KR NO	8800489 B 8800785 B 844755 A,B,	08-04-1988 09-05-1988 31-05-1985 29-05-1987 27-09-1989
		KR KR NO NZ	8800489 B 8800785 B 844755 A,B, 210339 A 23692 A 26643 A	08-04-1988 09-05-1988 31-05-1985 29-05-1987 27-09-1989 04-09-1992
		KR KR NO NZ PH PH PL	8800489 B 8800785 B 844755 A,B, 210339 A 23692 A 26643 A 250633 A	08-04-1988 09-05-1988 31-05-1985 29-05-1987 27-09-1989 04-09-1992 17-12-1985
		KR KR NO NZ PH PH	8800489 B 8800785 B 844755 A,B, 210339 A 23692 A 26643 A	08-04-1988 09-05-1988 31-05-1985 29-05-1987 27-09-1989 04-09-1992

information on patent family members

Inte onal Application No PCT/EP 00/05676

		1101721	00/056/6
Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
EP 0144101 A		SK 912884 A SU 1500162 A SU 1694064 A US 4888426 A US 5025014 A US 4695569 A US 5126339 A ZA 8409331 A ZW 19484 A	07-05-1997 07-08-1989 23-11-1991 19-12-1989 18-06-1991 22-09-1987 30-06-1992 30-07-1986 07-05-1986
EP 0145037 A	19-06-1985	US 4634704 A AT 40130 T AU 565884 B AU 3387284 A BG 43007 A CA 1247614 A DE 3476204 D DK 478484 A,B, ES 536590 D ES 8602763 A FI 843934 A,B, GR 80010 A HU 38629 A,B IL 73118 A JP 7098818 B JP 61010577 A KR 8701509 B KR 8701647 B NO 844009 A,B, NZ 209642 A PH 21310 A PL 249916 A PT 79307 A,B RO. 90457 A SU 1440346 A ZA 8407847 A ZM 4584 A ZM 16484 A IE 57722 B	06-01-1987 15-02-1989 01-10-1987 18-04-1985 15-03-1988 27-12-1988 23-02-1989 07-04-1985 16-11-1985 16-03-1986 07-04-1985 15-11-1984 30-06-1986 31-03-1988 25-10-1995 18-01-1986 20-08-1987 18-09-1987 09-04-1985 30-04-1987 28-09-1987 05-11-1985 01-11-1984 10-12-1986 23-11-1988 28-05-1986 28-05-1986 30-04-1986 24-03-1993
EP 0151824 A	21-08-1985	US 4588722 A AT 51621 T AU 575612 B AU 3736385 A BG 47033 A CA 1246070 A DE 3481841 D DK 8885 A ES 539266 D ES 8604203 A FI 850078 A,B, GR 850059 A HU 37780 A,B IE 57968 B IL 74017 A JP 60174778 A KR 8701046 B NO 850084 A	13-05-1986 15-04-1990 04-08-1988 01-08-1985 16-04-1990 06-12-1988 10-05-1990 10-07-1985 16-01-1986 01-06-1986 10-07-1985 11-01-1985 28-02-1986 03-06-1993 31-03-1988 09-09-1985 26-05-1987 10-07-1985

.nformation on patent family members

Inter Shal Application No
PCT/EP 00/05676

Patent document cited in search report					
EP 0151824		Publication date		atent family member(s)	Publication date
	Α		NO	892563 A	10-07-1985
	•		NZ	210675 A	29-05-1987
			PH	21554 A	11-12-1987
			PL	251476 A	17-12-1985
			PT	79808 A,B	01-02-1985
			RO	91075 A	27-02-1987
			SU	1400509 A	30-05-1988
			ZA	8500186 A	27-08-1986
			ZM	385 A	29-08-1986
			ZW	585 A	30-07-1986
EP 0151826	Α	21-08-1985	AT	87626 T	15-04-1993
21 0101020	••	21 00 1300	AU	573673 B	16-06-1988
			AU	3736485 A	12-09-1985
			BG	40965 A	14-03-1987
			CA	1259609 A	19-09-1989
			CZ	8500164 A	15-12-1993
			DE	3486121 A	06-05-1993
			DE	3486121 T	15-07-1993
			DK	8985 A	10-07-1995
			ES	539281 D	16-06-1987
			ES	8706668 A	16-09-1987
			FI	850079 A,B,	10-09-1987
				850079 A,B,	
			GR		05-04-1985 30-09-1985
			HU IE	36471 A,B	30-09-1985 23-03-1004
			IL	59707 B	23-03-1994
			JP	74018 A	31-08-1988 26-07-1995
				7068240 B	26-07-1995 2100-1095
			JP	60185777 A	21-09-1985
			KR	8701169 B	15-06-1987
			KR	8800247 B	15-03-1988
			KR	9001545 B	12-03-1990
			KR	9001546 B	12-03-1990
			NO	850085 A,B,	10-07-1985
			NZ	210776 A	30-03-1988
			PH	23995 A	09-02-1990
			PL	251488 A	12-01-1987
			PT	79809 A,B	01-02-1985
			RO	90622 A	10-12-1986
			SU	1396964 A	15-05-1988
			US	4839374 A	13-06-1989
			ZA	8500187 A	27-08-1986
			ZM	285 A	29-08-1986
			ZW	485 A	30-07-1986
			US 	4695575 A	22-09-1987
	A	19-08-1987	AT	79620 T	15-09-1992
EP 0232937			AU	583706 B	04-05-1989
EP 0232937			AU	6821887 A	06-08-1987
EP 0232937					
EP 0232937			CA	1327579 A	08-03-1994
EP 0232937					08-03-1994 19-08-1987
EP 0232937			CA	1327579 A	
EP 0232937			CA CN	1327579 A 87100563 A,B	19-08-1987
EP 0232937			CA CN CS	1327579 A 87100563 A,B 9103825 A 1865 A	19-08-1987 13-05-1992 05-04-1996
EP 0232937			CA CN CS CY DE	1327579 A 87100563 A,B 9103825 A 1865 A 3781173 A	19-08-1987 13-05-1992 05-04-1996 24-09-1992
EP 0232937			CA CN CS CY DE DE	1327579 A 87100563 A,B 9103825 A 1865 A 3781173 A 3781173 T	19-08-1987 13-05-1992 05-04-1996 24-09-1992 17-12-1992
EP 0232937			CA CN CS CY DE	1327579 A 87100563 A,B 9103825 A 1865 A 3781173 A	19-08-1987 13-05-1992 05-04-1996 24-09-1992

- information on patent family members

Inter anal Application No PCT/EP 00/05676

Patent document		Publication		Patent family	Publication
cited in search report		date		member(s)	date
EP 0232937	Α		FI	870448 A	04-08-1987
			GR HK	3006158 T 114695 A	21-06-1993
			HU	44544 A,B	21-07-1995 28-03-1988
			IE	60885 B	24-08-1994
			ĪĹ	81448 A	17-09-1990
			JP	2063263 C	24-06-1996
			JP	7094393 B	11-10-1995
			JP	62215575 A	22-09-1987
			JP	7179458 A	18-07-1995
			JP NO	8019126 B 870407 A	28-02-1996
			NZ NZ	219165 A	04-08-1987 26-04-1990
			PH	24738 A	01-10-1990
			PT	84234 A,B	01-03-1987
			ÜS	4835161 A	30-05-1989
			ZA	8700744 A	26-10-1988
			ZM	1287 A	29-08-1988
			ZW	2087 A	31-08-1988
EP 0295742	Α	21-12-1988	AT	79878 T	15-09-1992
			AU	600144 B	02-08-1990
			AU	1810988 A	22-12-1988
		•	CA	1324133 A	09-11-1993
			CN DE	88103784 A,B 3874013 A	28-12-1988
			DE	3874013 T	01-10-1992 07-01-1993
			DK	333288 A	20-12-1988
			ES	2045083 T	16-01-1994
			FI	882909 A,B,	20-12-1988
			GR	3006205 T	21-06-1993
			HU	48628 A,B	28-06-1989
			ΙE	61728 B	30-11-1994
			IL JP	86788 A 1025776 A	18-08-1992
			JP	2609464 B	27-01-1989 14-05-1997
			KR	9701158 B	29-01-1997
			NO	882641 A,B,	20-12-1988
			NZ	224928 A	26-04-1990
			PH	25532 A	24-07-1991
			PT	87742 A,B	01-07-1988
			SU	1644717 A	23-04-1991
			US US	4897401 A 5006527 A	30-01-1990
			ZA	8804346 A	09-04-1991 28-02-1990
EP 0297661		04-01-1989	AT	80628 T	
LI 023/001	^	04 01-1303	AU	603684 B	15-10-1992 22-11-1990
			AU	1835388 A	05-01-1989
			CA	1317939 A	18-05-1993
			DE	3874626 A	22-10-1992
			DE	3874626 T	25-02-1993
			ES	2052686 T	16-07-1994
			GR	3005715 T	07-06-1993
			IE	61360 B	02-11-1994
			IL JP	86921 A 1034979 A	15-11-1992 06-02-1989
			NZ	225080 A	26-02-1990

.. dormation on patent family members

Inter Wial Application No
PCT/EP 00/05676

Patent docum		Publication		Patent family	. Publication
cited in search report		date		member(s)	date
EP 029766	1 A	<u> </u>	PT	87866 A,B	30-06-1989
LI 023700			ÜS	4988689 A	29-01-1991
			US	5071846 A	10-12-1991
			US	5151424 A	
					29-09-1992
			ZA	8804696 A	28-03-1990
EP 030701	4 A	15-03-1989	AT	83147 T	15-12-1992
			AU	608336 B	28-03-1991
			AU	1885388 A	12-01-1989
			CA	1324131 A	09-11-1993
			CN	1030587 A,B	25-01-1989
			DE	3876551 A	21-01-1993
			DE	3876551 T	15-04-1993
			DK	382388 A	11-01-1989
			ES	2042711 T	16-12-1993
			FI	883282 A,B,	11-01-1989
			ĠŔ	3006971 T	30-06-1993
			HU	47573 A,B	28-03-1989
			ΪĒ	61354 B	02-11-1994
			ĬĹ	87018 A	21-02-1993
			ĴP	1031782 A	02-02-1989
			NO	883069 A,B,	11-01-1989
			NZ	225151 A	26-04-1990
			PT	87939 A,B	30-06-1989
			ÜŚ	4946843 A	07-08-1990
			US	5011842 A	30-04-1991
			US	5086056 A	04-02-1992
			ZA	8804946 A	28-03-1990
EP 393738	Α	24-10-1990	AT	114653 T	15-12-1994
			AU	615612 B	03-10-1991
			AU	5295190 A	11-10-1990
			CA	2013892 A	07-10-1990
			CN	1046161 A,B	17-10-1990
			DE	69014385 D	12-01-1995
			DE	69014385 T	20-04-1995
			DK	393738 T	16-01-1995
			ES	2067645 T	01-04-1995
			FI	95702 B	30-11-1995
			GR	3015154 T	31-05-1995
			HU	58324 A	28-02-1992
			ΙE	65460 B	01-11-1995
			IL	94008 A	18-02-1997
			JP	2290874 A	30-11-1990
			NO	174851 B	11-04-1994
			NZ	233088 A	25-10-1991
			PT	93671 A,B	20-11-1990
			RU	2030415 C	10-03-1995
			US	5272150 A	21-12-1993
			ZA	9002664 A	24-12-1991
ED E210		14_11_1070	110	/210EE0 A	26_001000
EP 5318	Α	14-11-1979	US AT	4219559 A 373887 B	26-08-1980
					27-02-1984
			AT	242579 A	15-07-1983
			AU	523352 B	22-07-1982
			AU BG	4529679 A 38164 A	18-10-1979 15-10-1985
			KI	35154 A	15-10-1985
			CA	1140119 A	25-01-1983

.. dormation on patent family members

Inter had Application No PCT/EP 00/05676

		 		00/030/6
Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	1	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
EP 5318 A		CS	7902227 A	12-03-1987
		CY	1250 A	31-08-1984
		DE	2961740 D	25-02-1982
		DK	83183 A	24-02-1983
		DK	129879 A	04-10-1979
		EG	13913 A	30-09-1982
		ES	479206 A	16-12-1979
		FI	791084 A,B,	04-10-1979
		GR	64907 A	07-06-1980
		HK	3184 A	20-01-1984
		HU	182965 B	28-03-1984
		ΙE	47818 B	27-06-1984
		IL	56992 A	31-03-1983
		JP	1001477 B	11-01-1989
		JP	1523384 C	12-10-1989
		JP	54151982 A	29-11-1979
		JP	1117880 A	10-05-1989
		JP	1622522 C	25-10-1991
		JP LV	2040666 B 5016 A	12-09-1990 10-06-1993
		MY	4685 A	31-12-1985
		NO	791097 A,B,	04-10-1979
		NO	842563 A,B,	04-10-1979
		NZ	189978 A	31-05-1984
		PH	15877 A	13-04-1983
		PL	214648 A	24-03-1980
		PT	69429 A	01-05-1979
		RO	79320 A	17-08-1982
		SG	29883 G	19-04-1984
		SU	1056902 A	23-11-1983
		YU	50283 A	31-12-1983
		YU	78479 A	31-10-1983
		ZA	7901557 A	26-11-1980
		AT	373888 B	27-02-1984
		AT CS	453882 A 8403451 A	15-07-1983
		KR	8300677 A	12-03-1987 28-03-1983
WO 9201697 A	06-02-1992	AT	188477 T	15-01-2000
		AU	646280 B	17-02-1994
		AU	8209391 A	18-02-1992
		CA CN	2086546 A	20-01-1992
		CN	1058216 A,B 9102239 A	29-01-1992 19-02-1992
		DE	69131895 D	19-02-1992
		DE	69131895 T	20-07-2000
		EP	0539420 A	05-05-1993
		ES	2142802 T	01-05-2000
		FI	930199 A	18-01-1993
		HÜ	64066 A	29-11-1993
		IL	98865 A	27-11-1995
		KR	206723 B	01-07-1999
		MX	9100307 A	28-02-1992
		NO	304791 B	15-02-1999
		NZ	238863 A	26-03-1993
		PL	170580 B	31-01-1997
		PT	98366 A,B	29-05-1992
		RU	2067978 C	20-10-1996

.

information on patent family members

Inte. onal Application No PCT/EP 00/05676

Patent document cited in search repo		Publication date		Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9201697	Α		US ZA	5360807 A 9105654 A	01-11-1994 31-03-1993
WO 9201687	A	06-02-1992	AP AT AU BG CN CS DE EP ESI HRU JP KX NO NZ PT ROU SI SK US	267 A 171449 T 644202 B 8214191 A 61342 B 97314 A 2086545 A 1058215 A,B 9102240 A 69130255 D 69130255 T 0539421 A 2121784 T 930198 A 930484 A 64340 A 98864 A 3070951 B 190299 B 9100312 A 300459 B 238864 A 169361 B 98365 A,B 11768 A 2059636 C 9111263 A 278133 B 5278165 A 5217860 A	16-06-1993 15-10-1998 02-12-1993 18-02-1992 30-06-1997 18-01-1994 20-01-1992 29-01-1992 29-01-1992 29-10-1998 08-04-1999 05-05-1993 16-12-1998 18-01-1993 30-04-1996 28-12-1995 31-07-2000 01-06-1999 28-02-1992 02-06-1997 26-08-1993 31-07-1996 29-05-1992 30-01-1997 10-05-1996 30-04-1995 07-02-1996 11-01-1994 08-06-1993
WO 9810764	A	19-03-1998	AU AU BR CN CZ EP NO PL ZA	9105653 A 717354 B 4621397 A 9712033 A 1230116 A 9900830 A 0936909 A 991164 A 332316 A 9707874 A	31-03-1993
EP 58146	A	18-08-1982	AT AU BA BA CA CY DE DK DK ES ES	8140 T 544066 B 8023182 A 97198 B 97199 B 1199918 A 1307 A 3260282 D 5388 A,B, 44082 A,B, 509358 D 8307776 A 521548 D	15-07-1984 16-05-1985 12-08-1982 02-08-1999 02-08-1999 28-01-1986 06-12-1985 02-08-1984 07-01-1988 07-08-1982 01-08-1983 01-11-1983

INTERNATIO AL SEARCH REPORT

...formation on patent family members

Inter Mail Application No PCT/EP 00/05676

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)		Publication date
EP 58146 A		ES	8406455 A	01-11-1984
		FI	820318 A,B,	07-08-1982
		GR	75407 A	13-07-1984
		HK	86485 A	15-11-1985
		JP	1463099 C	28-10-1988
		JP 5	7149282 A	14-09-1982
		JP 6	3011353 B	14-03-1988
		LT	2553 R	28-02-1994
•		Ł۷	5494 A	10-03-1994
		MY	27987 A	31-12-1987
		NO	820297 A,B,	09-08-1982
		NZ	199650 A	06-07-1984
		PL	234935 A	09-05-1983
		PL	239687 A	18 - 07-1983
		PT	74390 A,B	01 - 03-1982
			1227113 A	23-04-1986
			1310397 A	15-05-1987
			1287749 A	30-01-1987
			4525358 A	2 5- 06-1985
		YU	23782 A	30-06-1985
		YU	223584 A	30-06-1985
			8200752 A	29-12-1982
		HU	184989 B	28-11-1984

PATENT COOPERATION TREAT

	From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU			
PCT	То:			
NOTIFICATION RELATING TO PRIORITY CLAIM				
(PCT Rules 26bis.1 and 26bis.2 and Administrative Instructions, Sections 402 and 409)	QUAGHEBEUR, Luc Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V. Patent Dept 3547 Turnhoutseweg 30 B-2340 Beerse BELGIQUE			
Date of mailing (day/month/year) 11 December 2000 (11.12.00)				
Applicant's or agent's file reference JAB 1499-PCT	IMPORTANT NOTIFICATION			
International application No.	International filing date (day/month/year)			
PCT/EP00/05675	20 June 2000 (20.06.00)			
Applicant				
JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA N.V. et al				
The applicant is hereby notified of the following in respect of the	ne priority claim(s) made in the international application.			
even though the indication of the number of the earling even though the following indication in the priority of in the priority document: 2. Addition of priority claim. In accordance with the application the following priority claim has been added: even though the indication of the number of the earling even though the following indication in the priority of in the priority document: 3. As a result of the correction and/or addition of (a) priority document: 4. Priority claim considered not to have been made. The applicant failed to respond to the Invitation under the applicant's notice was received after the expiration. The applicant may, before the technical preparations for	s follows: 399 (28.06.99) 99202088.3 ier application is missing. laim is not the same as the corresponding indication appearing int's notice received on: or application is missing. laim is not the same as the corresponding indication appearing or claim(s) under items 1 and/or 2, the (earliest) priority date is: or Rule 26bis.2(a) (Form PCT/IB/316) within the prescribed time limit. on of the prescribed time limit under Rule 26bis.1(a). itim so as to comply with the requirements of Rule 4.10. international publication have been completed and subject to the plish, together with the international application, information PCT Applicant's Guide, Volume I, Annex B2(IB).			
6. A copy of this notification has been sent to the receiving Offic X to the International Searching Authority (where the intern X the designated Offices (which have already been notified	national search report has not yet been issued).			
The International Bureau of WIPO 34, chemin des Colombettes	Authorized officer Céline Faust			
1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland	Telephone No. (41.22) 222 22			

F ENT COOPERATION TREAT

	From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU
- 1	T

PCT

NOTIFICATION OF ELECTION

(PCT Rule 61.2)

Commissioner
US Department of Commerce
United States Patent and Trademark
Office, PCT
2011 South Clark Place Room
CP2/5C24
Arlington, VA 22202
ETATS-UNIS D'AMERIQUE

Date of mailing (day/month/year)

O1 February 2001 (01.02.01)

International application No.

PCT/EP00/05676

International filing date (day/month/year)

20 June 2000 (20.06.00)

Applicant

JANSSENS, Frans, Eduard et al

1.	The designated Office is hereby notified of its election made:
	X in the demand filed with the International Preliminary Examining Authority on:
	20 November 2000 (20.11.00)
	in a notice effecting later election filed with the International Bureau on:
2.	The election X was
	was not
	made before the expiration of 19 months from the priority date or, where Rule 32 applies, within the time limit under Rule 22.2(b).
	·

The International Bureau of WIPO 34, chemin des Colombettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland Authorized officer

Olivia TEFY

Telephone No.: (41-22) 338.83.38

Facsimile No.: (41-22) 740.14.35

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

W

RECEIVED

1 1 JUL 2001

From the

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINING AUTHORITY

To:

QUAGHEBEUR, Luc JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA N.V. Turnhoutseweg 30 B-2340 Beerse BELGIQUE Patent department

NOTIFICATION OF TRANSMITTAL OF THE INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

(PCT Rule 71.1)

Date of mailing

(day/month/year)

09.07.2001

Applicant's or agent's file reference

JAB 1498-PCT

IMPORTANT NOTIFICATION

International application No. PCT/EP00/05676

International filing date (day/month/year) . 20/06/2000

Priority date (day/month/year)

28/06/1999

Applicant

JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA N.V.

- 1. The applicant is hereby notified that this International Preliminary Examining Authority transmits herewith the international preliminary examination report and its annexes, if any, established on the international application.
- 2. A copy of the report and its annexes, if any, is being transmitted to the International Bureau for communication to all the elected Offices.
- 3. Where required by any of the elected Offices, the International Bureau will prepare an English translation of the report (but not of any annexes) and will transmit such translation to those Offices.

4. REMINDER

The applicant must enter the national phase before each elected Office by performing certain acts (filing translations and paying national fees) within 30 months from the priority date (or later in some Offices) (Article 39(1)) (see also the reminder sent by the International Bureau with Form PCT/IB/301).

Where a translation of the international application must be furnished to an elected Office, that translation must contain a translation of any annexes to the international preliminary examination report. It is the applicant's responsibility to prepare and furnish such translation directly to each elected Office concerned.

For further details on the applicable time limits and requirements of the elected Offices, see Volume II of the PCT Applicant's Guide.

Name and mailing address of the IPEA/

Authorized officer

European Patent Office D-80298 Munich Tel. +49 89 2399 - 0 Tx: 523656 epmu d THORNTON, J

Fax: +49 89 2399 - 4465

Tel.+49 89 2399-8072





PCT

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

(PCT Article 36 and Rule 70)

			\. \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \			
Applicant's o	r ager	nt's file reference	FOR FURTHER ACT	ION	See Notific	ation of Transmittal of International
JAB 1498	-PCT		FOR FURTHER ACT	ION .	Preliminary	Examination Report (Form PCT/IPEA/416)
International application No.			International filing date (da	y/month	/year).	Priority date (day/month/year)
PCT/EP00)/056	376	20/06/2000			28/06/1999
International C07D401		nt Classification (IPC) or na	tional classification and IPC		,	
	I PH	ARMACEUTICA N.V.				
and is	trans	mitted to the applicant a	according to Article 36.	•		ernational Preliminary Examining Authority
2. This R	EPO	RT consists of a total of	9 sheets, including this	cover s	heet.	
be (s	en a ee R	mended and are the ba	sis for this report and/or s 07 of the Administrative I	heets c	containing re	on, claims and/or drawings which have ectifications made before this Authority he PCT).
3. This re	eport ⊠	contains indications rela	ating to the following item	s:		
11		Priority				A CONTRACTOR OF THE CONTRACTOR
10				elty, in	ventive step	and industrial applicability
V V	∐ ⊠	Lack of unity of inventions and explanations and explanations.	ion under Article 35(2) with re- ions suporting such statel	gard to ment	novelty, inv	rentive step or industrial applicability;
VI		Certain documents cit				
VII			international application			
VIII			on the international applic	ation		
Date of sub	missio	on of the demand		Date of	completion of	of this report
20/11/20	00			09.07.2	2001	
Name and preliminary	exam	g address of the internation ining authority:	nal	Authori	ized officer	Septimores rations
9)	D-8	opean Patent Office 0298 Munich +49 89 2399 - 0 Tx: 5236	56 epmu d	Wörth	ı, C	

Telephone No. +49 89 2399 8726

Fax: +49 89 2399 - 4465

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

International application No. PCT/EP00/05676

ı.	Bas	is of the report
1.	the and	regard to the elements of the international application (Replacement sheets which have been furnished to receiving Office in response to an invitation under Article 14 are referred to in this report as "originally filed" are not annexed to this report since they do not contain amendments (Rules 70.16 and 70.17)): cription, pages:
	1-91	as originally filed
	Clai	ms, No.:
	1-17	as originally filed
2.	With lang	n regard to the language , all the elements marked above were available or furnished to this Authority in the puage in which the international application was filed, unless otherwise indicated under this item.
	The	se elements were available or furnished to this Authority in the following language: , which is:
		the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of the international search (under Rule 23.1(b)).
		the language of publication of the international application (under Rule 48.3(b)).
		the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of international preliminary examination (under Rule 55.2 and/or 55.3).
3.	With	n regard to any nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence disclosed in the international application, the rnational preliminary examination was carried out on the basis of the sequence listing:
		contained in the international application in written form.
		filed together with the international application in computer readable form.
		furnished subsequently to this Authority in written form.
		furnished subsequently to this Authority in computer readable form.
		The statement that the subsequently furnished written sequence listing does not go beyond the disclosure in the international application as filed has been furnished.
		The statement that the information recorded in computer readable form is identical to the written sequence listing has been furnished.

5. This report has been established as if (some of) the amendments had not been made, since they have been considered to go beyond the disclosure as filed (Rule 70.2(c)):

☐ the description,

☐ the claims,

☐ the drawings,

4. The amendments have resulted in the cancellation of:

pages:

sheets:

Nos.:

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY **EXAMINATION REPORT**

International application No. PCT/EP00/05676

(Any replacement sheet containing such amendments must be referred to under item 1 and annexed to this report.)

- 6. Additional observations, if necessary:
- V. Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement
- 1. Statement

Novelty (N)

Yes:

Claims 1, 11, 12, 16, 17

No:

Claims 2-10, 13-15

Inventive step (IS)

Yes:

Claims

No:

Claims 1-17

Industrial applicability (IA)

Claims 1-17 Yes: Claims

No:

2. Citations and explanations see separate sheet

VIII. Certain observations on the international application

The following observations on the clarity of the claims, description, and drawings or on the question whether the claims are fully supported by the description, are made: see separate sheet

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY Inter EXAMINATION REPORT - SEPARATE SHEET

- 1. Reference is made to the following documents; they have all been cited in the written opinion:
 - D1: EP-A-0 099 139; 25 January 1984 (1984-01-25) cited in the application
 - D2: EP-A-0 144 101; 12 June 1985 (1985-06-12) cited in the application
 - D3: EP-A-0 145 037; 19 June 1985 (1985-06-19) cited in the application
 - D4: EP-A-0 151 824; 21 August 1985 (1985-08-21) cited in the application
 - D5: EP-A-0 151 826; 21 August 1985 (1985-08-21) cited in the application
 - D6: EP-A-0 232 937; 19 August 1987 (1987-08-19) cited in the application
 - D7: EP-A-0 295 742; 21 December 1988 (1988-12-21) cited in the application
 - D8: EP-A-0 297 661; 4 January 1989 (1989-01-04) cited in the application
 - D9: EP-A-0 307 014; 15 March 1989 (1989-03-15) cited in the application
 - D10: EP-A-0 393 738; 24 October 1990 (1990-10-24)
 - D11: EP-A-0 005 318; 14 November 1979 (1979-11-14) cited in the application
 - D12: WO 92 01697 A; 6 February 1992 (1992-02-06) cited in the application
 - D13: WO 92 01687 A; 6 February 1992 (1992-02-06) cited in the application
 - D14: WO 98 10764 A; 19 March 1998 (1998-03-19)
 - D15: EP-A-0 058 146; 18 August 1982 (1982-08-18)
 - D16: R.R. TIDWELL ET AL: 'Aromatic amidines: comparison of their ability to block respiratory syncytial virus induced cell fusion and to inhibit plasmin, urokinase, thrombin, and trypsin' JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY., vol. 26, no. 2, 1983, pages 294-298, XP002123605 ISSN: 0022-2623
 - D17: CHIBA T ET AL: 'Inhibitory effect of pyridobenzazoles on virus replication in vitro' BIOLOGICAL & PHARMACEUTICAL BULLETIN, vol. 18, no. 8, August 1995 (1995-08), pages 1081-3, XP002148491
 - D18: WO 9855120 A; 10 December 1998 (1998-12-10)
 - D19: EP 0747363 A; 11 December 1996 (1996-12-11)
 - D20: WO 9831363 A; 23 July 1998 (1998-05-23)

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY **EXAMINATION REPORT - SEPARATE SHEET**

Reasoned statement under Art. 35(2) PCT with regard to novelty, inventive step 2. or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement (Reference to section V)

2.1 Novelty

2.1a Claims 1, 11-12; 16-17

Although the compounds of claim 1 overlap with the compounds of documents D1-D13, none of the cited documents D1-D13 discloses the use of such compounds as anti-viral agents.

Documents D14, which discloses a histamine-H1-receptor antagonist ("cetirizine", page 3, lines 10-14) as an anti-viral agent for the treatment of diseases induced by the respiratory-syncytial-virus (page 2, lines 17-22), differs from the subject-matter of the present application in sofar, as the structure of cetirizine does not possess a fused heterocyclic core.

Document D15 describes cetirizine-derivatives as anti-allergic, spasmolytic and antihistaminic agents (page 15, line 21 - 21, line 10). However, there is no indication for the use of compounds according to claim 1 of the present application as anti-viral agents.

Document D16 describes aromatic amides and their ability to block RSV-induced cell fusion. The subject-matter of the present application differs from the compounds 1-6 of document D16 inter alia in the structure of the substituent represented by Q of general formula (I) and from the compounds 7-24 inter alia in the number of nitrogens in the core molecule.

Document D17 discloses condensed tricycles (compounds 1-13, table 1) with 2 heteroatoms (N and Y) as inhibitors on RSV replication in vitro. However, the compounds described in the present application differ from the compounds of D17 inter alia in substituent Q of general formula (I).

Documents D18-20 disclose as anti-viral compounds benzimidazoles and pyridoimidazoles, respectively. The subject-matter of the present claims 1, 11-12 and 16-17 differs from these documents in the definition of the substituent Q, in particular mainly in the terminal amino-group of (b1-4) and the terminal carbo- or heterocycle in (b4-8).

Accordingly, claim 1 meets the requirements set forth in Article 33(2) PCT.

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY

EXAMINATION REPORT - SEPARATE SHEET

2.1b Claims 2-10, 13-15

Documents D1-D4, D6-D7 and D11 disclose benzimidazoles or their bioisosteric analogues which are substituted at position 2 with a 4-piperidine via an amine as therapeutic compounds.

In documents D5 and D8, the benzimidazoles or bioisosteric analogues are substituted at position 2 with a 4-piperidine via methylene, oxygen, sulfur, SO or SO₂ as therapeutic compounds.

Document D9 discloses benzimidazoles and their bioisosteric analogues substituted with N-alkyl-piperazines or -1,4-diazepines as therapeutic compounds.

Documents D10 and D12-D13 describe benzimidazoles or bioisosteric analogues, substituted at position 2 with a 4-piperidine via methylene, oxygen, sulfur, SO or SO₂, which are additionally substituted at position N1 with heterocycles like furane (D10), thiazolyl and pyridinyl (D12) or oxazolyl (D13) as therapeutic compounds.

The Applicant has introduced at the end of claims 2-7 provisos, which appear to be directed to exclude the above cited prior art documents D1-D13.

However, as long as the e.g. the proviso in claim 2, line 8 in the present application is solely valid for G=methylene, the subject-matter of this claim overlaps with D4 and D6 inter alia for the following combinations:

present application	D4 or D6
-a1-a2-a3-a4- = (a-1)	-A1-A2-A3-A4- = (a-1)
G = direct bond; R ¹ = pyrazinyl	$R^1 = Ar^1 = pyrazinyl$
$Q = (b-5)$ with v=2 and $Y^1 = NR^2$	$R^2 = R = hydrogen; L = (b-1)$

Furthermore, the subject-matter of this claim overlaps with D7 for the same reasons as indicated for D4 and D6 in the case that G is e.g. an ethylene.

In addition, the subject-matter of the present application overlaps with the subjectmatter D5 for X1 defined as S, S=O, S(=O)2, O and CH2, whereas the other variables are defined as described above as well as with the subject-matter of present claim 2 for the definitions given above, whereas Q is defined by (b-6) and X² as CH₂.

Accordingly, claims 2-10 and 13-15 do not fulfill the requirements set forth in Article 33(2) PCT.

Furthermore, as long as there is no back reference for the compounds of claim 9 (Group (I"), see description page 6, line 20 - page 7, line 37) introduced, a common structural element of this list appears to be absent.

2.2 Inventive step

Documents D18 and D20 are regarded as respected closest prior art for some of the claimed families of compounds. These documents disclose N1-C2-substituted benzimidazoles and its bioisosteric analogue pyridoimidazole as antiviral agents.

In view of these documents, the problem to be solved by the present application can be regarded as the provision of further fused 5,6-membered heterocycle-derivatives with unexpected effects.

The solution to this problem provided by the present application consists in analogisations of the C2- and N1-substituents of the benzimidazole-core or its bioisosteric analogues.

However, for the man skilled in the art, having knowledge of the combined technical teaching of

- document D16 (amidino-benzimidazoles and amidino-indole derivatives as agents exhibiting a high potency against virus-induced cell fusion and anti-viral lead compounds, see page 295, 1st col., last paragraph)),
- document D17 (fused benzimidazoles (see compounds 1-4, table 1, page 1082) as compounds exhibiting an inhibitory effect on RSV virus replication),
- documents D18-D19 (substituted benzimidazoles, which inhibit the growth of picornaviruses (see inter alia the abstracts)) and
- document D20 (substituted pyridoimidazoles which are at present regarded as bioisoteric analogues to benzimidazoles) useful as antiviral agents,

the feature of the analogisation of benzimidazole-substituents and their isosteric analogues is merely one of several straightforward possibilities from which the skilled person would select, in accordance with circumstances, without the exercise of inventive skill, in order to solve the problem posed.

Moreover, underlying the principles of structure-activity relationship (SAR), it is stressed that for structural similar compounds a similar biological activity can be

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY International application No. PCT/EP00/05676 EXAMINATION REPORT - SEPARATE SHEET

expected. As a consequence thereof, SAR allow to predict that for formal analogisations the pharmaceutical activity will be maintained.

Furthermore, the inhibiting effect of the well known histamine H1 receptor antagonist cetirizine on viral replication together with an inhibiting effect of RSV-induced cell modifications disclosed in document D14, page 2, lines 17-22 and page 3, lines 10-13, is a strong hint for a man skilled in the art having knowledge of the technical teaching of documents D16 and D17 (benzimidazole as lead compound for anti-viral agents) to examine, if known anti-allergic compounds bearing a benzimidazole-core exhibit also anti-viral properties, thereby arriving to the solution proposed by the present application.

It is noted, that SAR does not allow to predict whether the activity is better or worse. As a consequence thereof, an unexpected effect can be considered as an indication for inventive step. However, the applicant has not shown that the claimed compounds are likely to have any unexpected effects compared to those in the cited documents, in particular the nearest possible compounds, apparently represented by the compounds disclosed in documents D18 and D20.

As far as the scope of the claims is concerned, attention is drawn to the point, that only such compounds can be claimed which represent a solution of the problem underlying the application in suit. The extent of a reasonable generalisation depends on the credibility that substantially all the alternatives claimed must be a solution to the problem. Extremely broad generalisations e.g. like in claim 1 "optionally substituted" in the definition of the radicals (a1-5), R1 or R2 are in contradiction to the basis of even qualitative structure-activity-relationships. Taking into account the relevant state of the art and the common knowledge, it appears not to be predictable, that all alternatives would achieve the technical effect.

Accordingly, claims 1-15 do not fulfill the requirements set forth in Article 33(3) PCT.

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY International application No. PCT/EP00/05676 EXAMINATION REPORT - SEPARATE SHEET

- 3. Certain observations on the international application (Reference to section VIII)
- 3.1 The terms "prodrug" and "metal complex" in claim 1, 2, 8 and 9 do not fulfill the requirements of Article 6 PCT. The mere term "prodrug" is a functional expression attempting to define the subject-matter in terms of a desired property instead of indicating precisely the technical measures specifically designed to solve the problem. Functional terms will only be allowable if the solution is one which can directly be verified by tests or procedures adequately specified of known to the person skilled in the art and which verification does not need undue experimentation (cf. Guidelines C-III, 4.7). This requirement is presently not fulfilled.
- 3.2 It is stressed out that claims must be clear and concise in accordance to Article 6 PCT in order to enable potential users to ascertain without undue burden whether their planned use is likely to infringe the patent monopoly. In the present case, due to the generalisation of the claimed subject-matter of claim 2, the public has to construe 6 complicated provisos together with all the multiple structural combinations to form a valid and commercially useful opinion on whether or not a potential compound falls within the scope of the claims or not. This appears to impose a severe and totally undue burden on the public and renders the claims not clear (Article 6 PCT).
- 3.3 Contrary to the requirements of Rule 5.1(a)(ii) PCT, documents D10 and D14-17 are not identified and the relevant background art disclosed therein is not mentioned.
- 3.4 Attention is drawn to the fact that dependent claims are only admissible in the case of a allowable independent claim (cf. Rule 6.4 PCT).